



Cisco Nexus 7706 Hardware Installation Guide

First Published: 2013-12-24

Last Modified: 2020-01-02

Americas Headquarters

Cisco Systems, Inc.
170 West Tasman Drive
San Jose, CA 95134-1706
USA
<http://www.cisco.com>
Tel: 408 526-4000
800 553-NETS (6387)
Fax: 408 527-0883

Text Part Number: OL-31330-01

THE SPECIFICATIONS AND INFORMATION REGARDING THE PRODUCTS IN THIS MANUAL ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. ALL STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS IN THIS MANUAL ARE BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE BUT ARE PRESENTED WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. USERS MUST TAKE FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THEIR APPLICATION OF ANY PRODUCTS.

THE SOFTWARE LICENSE AND LIMITED WARRANTY FOR THE ACCOMPANYING PRODUCT ARE SET FORTH IN THE INFORMATION PACKET THAT SHIPPED WITH THE PRODUCT AND ARE INCORPORATED HEREIN BY THIS REFERENCE. IF YOU ARE UNABLE TO LOCATE THE SOFTWARE LICENSE OR LIMITED WARRANTY, CONTACT YOUR CISCO REPRESENTATIVE FOR A COPY.

The following information is for FCC compliance of Class A devices: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio-frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case users will be required to correct the interference at their own expense.

The following information is for FCC compliance of Class B devices: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If the equipment causes interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, users are encouraged to try to correct the interference by using one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Modifications to this product not authorized by Cisco could void the FCC approval and negate your authority to operate the product.

The Cisco implementation of TCP header compression is an adaptation of a program developed by the University of California, Berkeley (UCB) as part of UCB's public domain version of the UNIX operating system. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1981, Regents of the University of California.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY OTHER WARRANTY HEREIN, ALL DOCUMENT FILES AND SOFTWARE OF THESE SUPPLIERS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH ALL FAULTS. CISCO AND THE ABOVE-NAMED SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THOSE OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, OR TRADE PRACTICE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MANUAL, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Any Internet Protocol (IP) addresses and phone numbers used in this document are not intended to be actual addresses and phone numbers. Any examples, command display output, network topology diagrams, and other figures included in the document are shown for illustrative purposes only. Any use of actual IP addresses or phone numbers in illustrative content is unintentional and coincidental.

All printed copies and duplicate soft copies of this document are considered uncontrolled. See the current online version for the latest version.

Cisco has more than 200 offices worldwide. Addresses and phone numbers are listed on the Cisco website at www.cisco.com/go/offices.

The documentation set for this product strives to use bias-free language. For purposes of this documentation set, bias-free is defined as language that does not imply discrimination based on age, disability, gender, racial identity, ethnic identity, sexual orientation, socioeconomic status, and intersectionality. Exceptions may be present in the documentation due to language that is hardcoded in the user interfaces of the product software, language used based on standards documentation, or language that is used by a referenced third-party product.

Cisco and the Cisco logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Cisco and/or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. To view a list of Cisco trademarks, go to this URL: <https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/about/legal/trademarks.html>. Third-party trademarks mentioned are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (1721R)

© 2022 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.



CONTENTS

PREFACE

Preface	ix
Audience	ix
Document Conventions	ix
Documentation Feedback	x
Communications, Services, and Additional Information	xi

CHAPTER 1

Overview	1
Overview of the Cisco Nexus 7706 Switch Installation Features	1

CHAPTER 2

Preparing the Site	5
Humidity Requirements	5
Altitude Requirements	5
Dust and Particulate Requirements	6
Minimizing Electromagnetic and Radio Frequency Interference	6
Shock and Vibration Requirements	7
Grounding Requirements	7
Planning for Power Requirements	7
Rack and Cabinet Requirements	10
Clearance Requirements	11

CHAPTER 3

Installing the Switch Chassis	15
Installing a Rack or Cabinet	15
Unpacking and Inspecting a New Switch	16
Attaching Bottom-Support Rails to a Two-Post Rack	17
Attaching Bottom-Support Rails to a Four-Post Rack	19
Installing the Chassis in a Two-Post Rack	21

Installing the Chassis on a Four-Post Rack or Cabinet	26
Grounding a Switch Chassis	31
Grounding the Front ID Door	33
Installing Cable Management Frames onto the Chassis	36
Attaching the Front Door to the Chassis	38
Installing Air Filters	40

CHAPTER 4**Connecting to the Network 43**

Guidelines for Connecting Ports	43
Connecting a Console to the Switch	44
Connecting the Management Interface	45
Creating the Initial Switch Configuration	46
Connecting Interface Ports to the Network	47
Connecting a Fiber-Optic Cable to a Transceiver	47
Disconnecting Optical Ports from the Network	48
Maintaining Transceivers and Optical Cables	48

CHAPTER 5**Managing the Switch 51**

Displaying Information About Installed Hardware Modules	51
Displaying the Hardware Inventory for a Switch	54
Displaying the Backplane and Serial Number Information	55
Displaying Environmental Information for a Switch	57
Displaying Temperatures for Modules	60
Connecting to a Module	62
Saving the Module Configuration	63
Displaying Power Usage Information	63
Reloading a Module	64
Rebooting the Switch	64
Overview of Supervisor Modules	65
Shutting Down a Supervisor Module	65
Overview of I/O Module Support	65
Accessing an I/O Module through a Console	67
Displaying Information for the Installed Modules	67
Purging the Module Configuration	70

Shut Down or Power Up an I/O Module	71
Overview of Fabric Module Support	71
Change the Amount of Power Reserved for Fabric Modules	71
Shutting Down or Powering Up a Fabric Module	72
Power Modes Overview	73
Guidelines for Configuring Power Redundancy Modes	74
Configuring the Power Mode	74
Maximum Power Available for 3-kW AC Power Supplies	75
Maximum Power Available for 3-kW DC Power Supplies	75
Maximum Power Available for 3.5-kW Inputs (AC)	76
Maximum Power Available for 3.5-kW Inputs (DC)	76
Overview of Fan Trays	77
Displaying the Status for the Fan Trays	79
<hr/>	
CHAPTER 6	Installing or Replacing Modules, Fan Trays, and Power Supplies 81
Using an ESD Wrist Strap to Prevent ESD Damage	81
Installing or Replacing a Supervisor Module	82
Migrating from Supervisor 2E Modules (N77-SUP2E) to Supervisor 3E Modules (N77-SUP3E)	86
Nondisruptive Migration from Supervisor 2E Modules (N77-SUP2E) to Supervisor 3E Modules (N77-SUP3E)	89
Prerequisites for Nondisruptive Migration from Supervisor 2E Modules (N77-SUP2E) to Supervisor 3E Modules (N77-SUP3E)	90
Case 1: Dual Supervisor Migration	91
Case 2: Single Supervisor Migration	95
Viewing Migration Status	98
Troubleshooting	101
Migration Clean Up	109
Installing or Replacing an I/O Module	110
Replacing a Fan Tray	112
Migrating from Gen 1 Fan Trays (N77-C7706-FAN) to Gen 2 Fan Trays (N77-C7706-FAN-2)	116
Installing or Replacing a Fabric Module	118
Replacing Fabric 2 Modules with Fabric 3 Modules	123
Recovery Procedure for Downgrading to Fabric 2 Modules from Fabric 3 Modules	124
Installing or Replacing a Power Supply in a Switch Chassis	124

Connecting a 3-kW AC Power Supply to AC Power Sources	126
Connecting a 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply to AC Power Sources	127
Connecting DC Power Supplies with Power Sources	129
Connecting a 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply to DC Power Sources	131

APPENDIX A**Switch Specifications 133**

Environmental Specifications	133
Switch Dimensions	134
Power Requirements	134
Maximum Power Available for 3-kW AC Power Supplies	135
Maximum Power Available for 3-kW DC Power Supplies	135
Maximum Power Available for 3.5-kW Inputs (AC)	136
Maximum Power Available for 3.5-kW Inputs (DC)	137
Weights and Quantities for the Chassis, Modules, Fan Trays, and Power Supplies	138
Transceivers, Connectors, and Cables Used with Each I/O Module	139
100-Gb CPAK Transceiver Specifications	147
100-Gb QSFP+ Transceiver Specifications	148
40-Gb QSFP+ Transceiver Specifications	150
10-Gb SFP+ Optical Transceivers and Fabric Extender Transceivers	152
10BASE-DWDM SFP+ Transceiver Specifications	156
1-Gb SFP Transceivers	160
1000BASE-CWDM SFP Transceiver Cables	160
1000BASE-DWDM SFP Transceiver Specifications	162
1000BASE-T and 1000BASE-X SFP Transceiver Specifications	164
RJ-45 Module Connectors	166
Power Supply Cable Specifications	166
3-kW AC Power Cord Specifications	167
3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply AC Power Cord Specifications	168
3-kW DC Power Cord Specifications	178
3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply DC Power Cord Specifications	178

APPENDIX B**LEDs 181**

Chassis LEDs	181
Supervisor Module LEDs	182

I/O Module LEDs	184
Fabric Module LEDs	186
Fan Tray LEDs	186
Power Supply LEDs	187

APPENDIX C**Accessory Kits 189**

Cisco Nexus 7706 Switch Accessory Kit	189
Cisco Nexus 7706 Switch Center-Mount Rails Kit	192

APPENDIX D**Site Preparation and Maintenance Records 193**

Site Preparation Checklist	193
Contact and Site Information	194
Chassis and Module Information	195



Preface

This preface describes the audience, organization and conventions of the *Cisco Nexus 7706 Hardware Installation Guide*. It also provides information on how to obtain related documentation.

- [Audience, on page ix](#)
- [Document Conventions, on page ix](#)
- [Documentation Feedback, on page x](#)
- [Communications, Services, and Additional Information, on page xi](#)

Audience

This publication is for network administrators who configure and maintain Cisco Nexus devices.

Document Conventions



Note As part of our constant endeavor to remodel our documents to meet our customers' requirements, we have modified the manner in which we document configuration tasks. As a result of this, you may find a deviation in the style used to describe these tasks, with the newly included sections of the document following the new format.

Command descriptions use the following conventions:

Convention	Description
bold	Bold text indicates the commands and keywords that you enter literally as shown.
<i>Italic</i>	Italic text indicates arguments for which the user supplies the values.
[x]	Square brackets enclose an optional element (keyword or argument).
[x y]	Square brackets enclosing keywords or arguments separated by a vertical bar indicate an optional choice.

Convention	Description
{x y}	Braces enclosing keywords or arguments separated by a vertical bar indicate a required choice.
[x {y z}]	Nested set of square brackets or braces indicate optional or required choices within optional or required elements. Braces and a vertical bar within square brackets indicate a required choice within an optional element.
<i>variable</i>	Indicates a variable for which you supply values, in context where italics cannot be used.
string	A nonquoted set of characters. Do not use quotation marks around the string or the string will include the quotation marks.

Examples use the following conventions:

Convention	Description
<code>screen font</code>	Terminal sessions and information the switch displays are in screen font.
boldface screen font	Information you must enter is in boldface screen font.
<i>italic screen font</i>	Arguments for which you supply values are in italic screen font.
<>	Nonprinting characters, such as passwords, are in angle brackets.
[]	Default responses to system prompts are in square brackets.
!, #	An exclamation point (!) or a pound sign (#) at the beginning of a line of code indicates a comment line.

This document uses the following conventions:



Note Means *reader take note*. Notes contain helpful suggestions or references to material not covered in the manual.



Caution Means *reader be careful*. In this situation, you might do something that could result in equipment damage or loss of data.

Documentation Feedback

To provide technical feedback on this document, or to report an error or omission, please send your comments to: .

We appreciate your feedback.

Communications, Services, and Additional Information

- To receive timely, relevant information from Cisco, sign up at [Cisco Profile Manager](#).
- To get the business impact you're looking for with the technologies that matter, visit [Cisco Services](#).
- To submit a service request, visit [Cisco Support](#).
- To discover and browse secure, validated enterprise-class apps, products, solutions and services, visit [Cisco Marketplace](#).
- To obtain general networking, training, and certification titles, visit [Cisco Press](#).
- To find warranty information for a specific product or product family, access [Cisco Warranty Finder](#).

Cisco Bug Search Tool

[Cisco Bug Search Tool](#) (BST) is a web-based tool that acts as a gateway to the Cisco bug tracking system that maintains a comprehensive list of defects and vulnerabilities in Cisco products and software. BST provides you with detailed defect information about your products and software.



CHAPTER 1

Overview

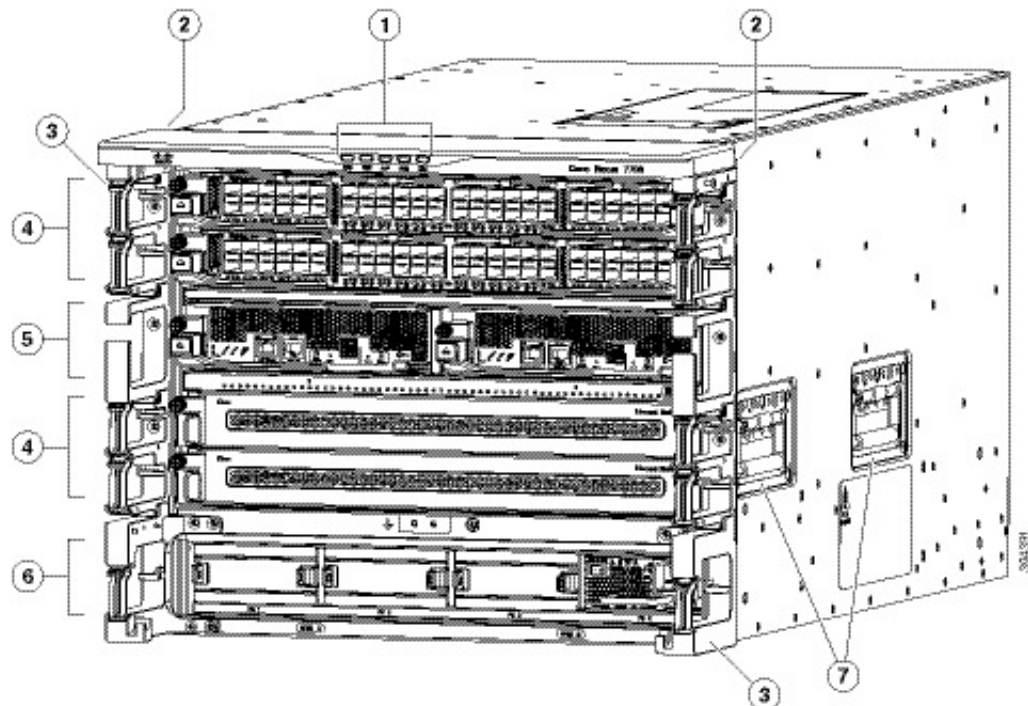
This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Overview of the Cisco Nexus 7706 Switch Installation Features, on page 1](#)

Overview of the Cisco Nexus 7706 Switch Installation Features

The Cisco Nexus 7706 chassis has six slots for one or two supervisor modules and up to four I/O modules. The chassis also holds up to six fabric modules, up to four AC or DC 3-kW and 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC power supplies, and three fan trays. To group the many networking cables for each I/O module on this chassis, you can install cable management frames on either side of the chassis. You can install an optional locking front door and you can install an optional set of air filters on the front door and cable management frames. The following figure shows the standard hardware features seen from the front of the chassis.

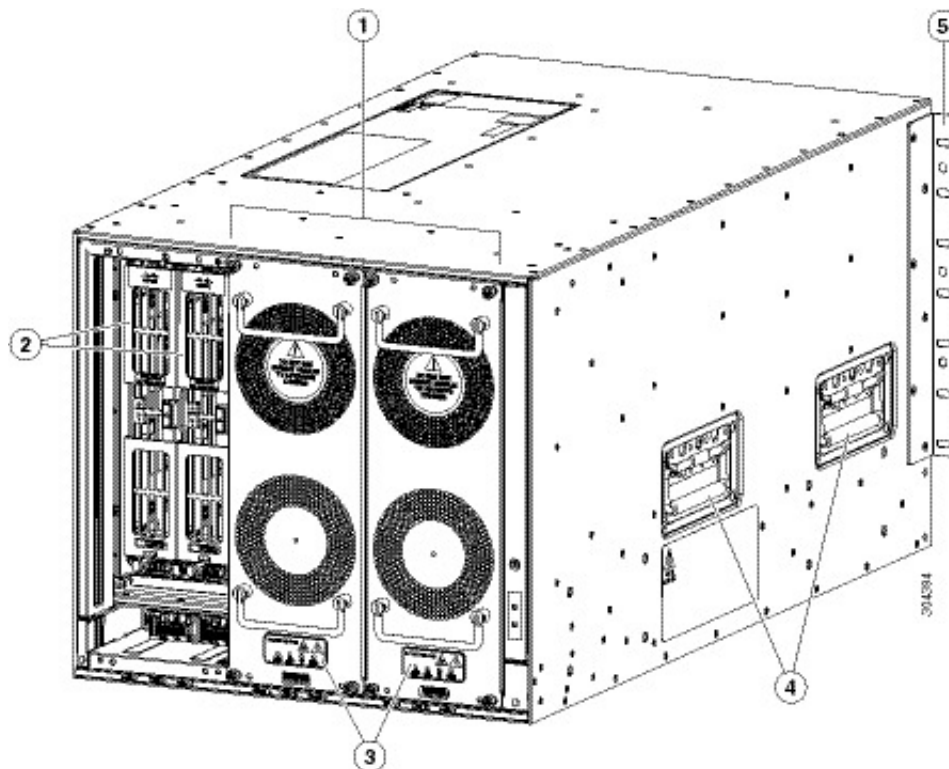
Figure 1: Standard Hardware Features on the Front of the Cisco Nexus 7706 Chassis



1	Chassis LEDs	5	Supervisor modules (one or two) (N77-SUP2E and N77-SUP3E) in Slots 3, 4
2	Chassis mounting brackets (one on each side of the chassis behind the cable management frames)	6	Power supplies (up to 4) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 3-kW AC power supply (N77-AC-3KW) • 3-kW DC power supply (N77-DC-3KW) • 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC power supply (N77-HV-3.5KW)
3	Cable management frame (2)	7	Chassis handles (used only for small movements on the rack)
4	I/O modules (1–4) in Slots 1,2,5,6 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 48-port 1/10-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F248XP-23E) • 12-port 100-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F312CK-26) • 24-port 40-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F324FQ-25) • 48-port 1- and 10-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F348XP-23) • 30-port 100-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F430CQ-36) • 12-port 100-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-M312CQ-26L) • 24-port 40-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-M324FQ-25L) • 48-port 1- and 10-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-M348XP-23L) 		

The following figure shows the standard hardware features seen from the rear of the chassis.

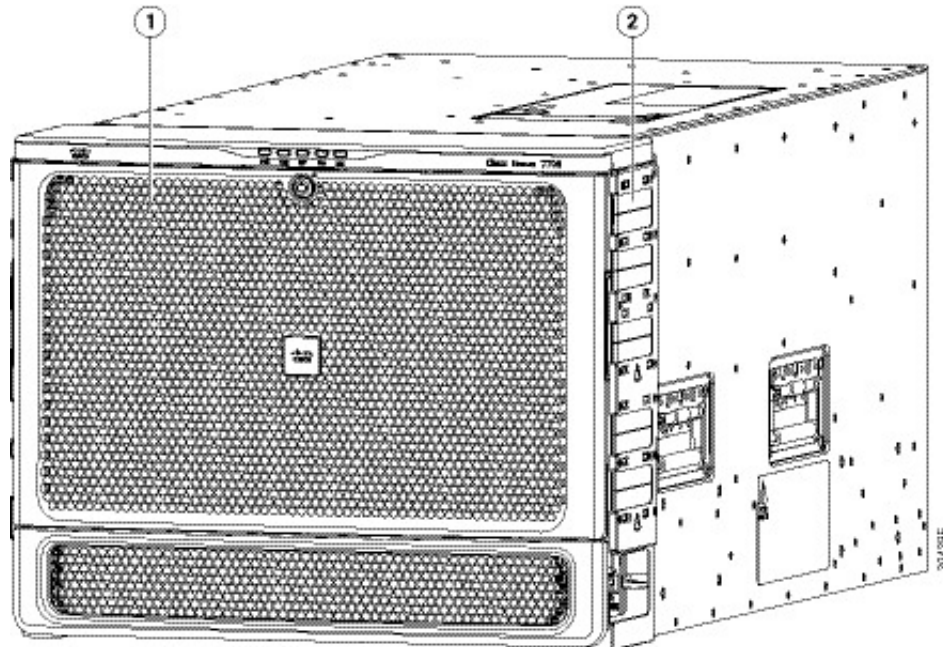
Figure 2: Standard Hardware Features on the Rear of the Cisco Nexus 7706 Chassis



1	Three fan trays—only two fan trays, N77-C7706-FAN, are shown in this figure, one is removed to show the two fabric modules in back. There are 2 types of fan trays: 38 mm Gen 1 fan trays (N77-C7706-FAN) and 76 mm Gen 2 fan trays (N77-C7706-FAN-2). Use the Gen 2 fan trays for Network Equipment Building System (NEBS) compliance when the Cisco Nexus 7700 M3-Series 12-port 100-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-M312CQ-26L) or the Cisco Nexus 7700 F4-Series 30-port 100-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F430CQ-36) is installed in the switch.	4	Handles used only for adjusting the position of the chassis on the mechanical lift or on the bottom support rails (do not lift the chassis with these handles)
2	Fabric modules (up to six with two behind each fan tray) (N77-C7706-FAB-2 and N77-C7706-FAB-3)	5	Vertical mounting brackets used for securing the chassis to the rack and for holding the cable management frames
3	LEDs for the fan tray and fabric modules behind the fan tray		

The following figure shows the optional features seen on the front of the Cisco Nexus 7706 chassis.

Figure 3: Optional Hardware Features on the Front of the Cisco Nexus 7706 Chassis



1	Front doors with locks (N77-C7706-FDK)	2	Air filter (N77-C7706-AFLT) shown on the outside of the cable management frames. Filters also included inside and on the sides of the front door (not shown).
---	--	---	---



CHAPTER 2

Preparing the Site

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Humidity Requirements, on page 5](#)
- [Altitude Requirements, on page 5](#)
- [Dust and Particulate Requirements, on page 6](#)
- [Minimizing Electromagnetic and Radio Frequency Interference, on page 6](#)
- [Shock and Vibration Requirements, on page 7](#)
- [Grounding Requirements, on page 7](#)
- [Planning for Power Requirements, on page 7](#)
- [Rack and Cabinet Requirements, on page 10](#)
- [Clearance Requirements, on page 11](#)

Humidity Requirements

High humidity can cause moisture to seep into the switch. Moisture can cause corrosion of internal components and degradation of properties such as electrical resistance, thermal conductivity, physical strength, and size. The switch is rated to operate at 8 to 80 percent relative humidity, with a humidity gradation of 10 percent per hour.

The switch can withstand from 5 to 90 percent relative humidity. Buildings in which the climate is controlled by air-conditioning in the warmer months and by heat during the colder months usually maintain an acceptable level of humidity for the switch equipment. However, if the switch is located in an unusually humid location, you should use a dehumidifier to maintain the humidity within an acceptable range.

Altitude Requirements

If you operate a switch at a high altitude (low pressure), the efficiency of forced and convection cooling is reduced and can result in electrical problems that are related to arcing and corona effects. This condition can also cause sealed components with internal pressure, such as electrolytic capacitors, to fail or to perform at a reduced efficiency. This switch is rated to operate at altitudes from –500 to 13,123 feet (–152 to 4,000 meters). You can store the switch at altitudes of –1,000 to 30,000 feet (–305 to 9,144 meters).

Dust and Particulate Requirements

Exhaust fans cool power supplies and system fan trays cool switches by drawing in air and exhausting air out through various openings in the chassis. However, fans also ingest dust and other particles, causing contaminant buildup in the switch and increased internal chassis temperature. A clean operating environment can greatly reduce the negative effects of dust and other particles, which act as insulators and interfere with the mechanical components in the switch.

In addition to regular cleaning, follow these precautions to avoid contamination of your switch:

- Do not permit smoking near the switch.
- Do not permit food or drink near the switch.

Minimizing Electromagnetic and Radio Frequency Interference

Electromagnetic interference (EMI) and radio frequency interference (RFI) from the switch can adversely affect other devices such as radio and television (TV) receivers operating near the switch. Radio frequencies that emanate from the switch can also interfere with cordless and low-power telephones. Conversely, RFI from high-power telephones can cause spurious characters to appear on the switch monitor.

RFI is defined as any EMI with a frequency above 10 kHz. This type of interference can travel from the switch to other devices through the power cable and power source or through the air like transmitted radio waves. The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) publishes specific regulations to limit the amount of EMI and RFI that can be emitted by computing equipment. Each switch meets these FCC regulations.

To reduce the possibility of EMI and RFI, follow these guidelines:

- Cover all open expansion slots with a metal filler.
- Always use shielded cables with metal connector shells for attaching peripherals to the switch.

When wires are run for any significant distance in an electromagnetic field, interference can occur between the field and the signals on the wires and cause the following implications:

- Bad wiring can result in radio interference emanating from the plant wiring.
- Strong EMI, especially when it is caused by lightning or radio transmitters, can destroy the signal drivers and receivers in the chassis and even create an electrical hazard by conducting power surges through lines into equipment.



Note To predict and prevent strong EMI, you might need to consult experts in radio frequency interference (RFI).

The wiring is unlikely to emit radio interference if you use twisted-pair cable with a good distribution of grounding conductors. If you exceed the recommended distances, use a high-quality twisted-pair cable with one ground conductor for each data signal when applicable.

If the wires exceed the recommended distances, or if wires pass between buildings, give special consideration to the effect of a lightning strike in your vicinity. The electromagnetic pulse caused by lightning or other high-energy phenomena can easily couple enough energy into unshielded conductors to destroy electronic

switches. You may want to consult experts in electrical surge suppression and shielding if you had similar problems in the past.

Shock and Vibration Requirements

The switch shock- and vibration-tested for operating ranges, handling, and earthquake standards to Network Equipment Building Standards (NEBS) Zone 4 per GR-63-Core.

Grounding Requirements

The switch is sensitive to variations in voltage supplied by the power sources. Overvoltage, undervoltage, and transients (or spikes) can erase data from the memory or cause components to fail. To protect against these types of problems, ensure that there is an earth-ground connection for the switch. You can connect the grounding pad on the switch either directly to the earth-ground connection or to a fully bonded and grounded rack.

You must provide the grounding cable to make this connection but you can connect the grounding wire to the switch using a grounding lug that ships with the switch. Size the grounding wire to meet local and national installation requirements. Depending on the power supply and system, a 12 AWG to 6 AWG copper conductor is required for U.S. installations (for those installations, we recommend that you use commercially available 6 AWG wire). The length of the grounding wire depends on the proximity of the switch to proper grounding facilities.

Planning for Power Requirements

To plan for the power requirements of a switch, you must determine each of the following:

- Power requirements of the switch
- Minimum number of power supplies required to power the switch and its components
- Power mode to use and the number of additional power supplies required for that mode

You must also ensure that the circuit used for the switch is dedicated to the switch to minimize the possibility of circuit failure.

When you know the amount of power that is required for operations (available power) and redundancy (reserve power), you can plan for the required number of input power receptacles with reach of the switch location.

-
- Step 1** Determine the power requirement for the switch by summing the maximum wattage for each installed module (see the following table).

Table 1: Power Requirements for the Cisco Nexus 7706 Switch Modules

Component	Quantity	Maximum	Typical
Supervisor Modules	1 or 2 (same type if using 2)	—	—
Supervisor 2 Enhanced (N77-SUP2E)		265 W	137 W
Supervisor 3 Enhanced (N77-SUP3E)		150 W	110 W
F2 I/O Modules	1 to 4 (can mix types)	—	—
48-port 1- and 10-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F248XP-23E)		500 W	451 W
F3 I/O Modules		—	—
48-port 1- and 10-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F348XP-23)		480 W	450 W
24-port 40-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F324FQ-25)		740 W	650 W
12-port 100-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F312CK-26)		730 W	640 W
F4 I/O Module		—	—
30-port 100-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F430CQ-36)		1000 W	730 W
M3 I/O Modules		—	—
48-port 1- and 10-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-M348XP-23L)		560 W	500 W
24-port 40-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-M324FQ-25L)	750 W	700 W	
12-port 100-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-M312CQ-26L)	1095 W	800 W	
Fabric Module (N77-C7706-FAB-2)	3 to 6	80 W	65 W
Fabric Module (N77-C7706-FAB-3)	3 to 6	85 W	65 W
Fan Trays	—	—	—
38 mm Gen 1 Fan Tray (N77-C7706-FAN)	3	300 W	30 W
76 mm Gen 2 Fan Tray (N77-C7706-FAN-2)	3	300 W	30 W

For example, if you are installing a switch with two Supervisor 2 modules (2 x 265 W), four 48-port 10-Gigabit Ethernet I/O modules (PID: N77-F248XP-23E) (4 x 500 W), six fabric modules (6 x 150 W) and three fan trays (3 x 600 W), the power requirements for this switch would be 5230 W.

Note Maximum power values are used for calculating the power requirements.

Step 2 Determine the number of power supplies needed for the available power requirement by dividing the power requirement amount (see Step 1) by the output wattage of the power supplies installed in the switch.

For example, if you are installing a switch with 3-kW power supplies and have a consumption of 5230 W, you need two power supplies (5230 W / 3000 W = 1.74 or 2 power supplies) to operate the switch and all of its modules.

Step 3 Select one of the following power modes to determine the number of additional power supplies required for reserve power:

- **Combined power**—Do not add any power supplies to the number of power supplies calculated for the available power in Step 2. This power mode does not provide power redundancy, so no extra power supplies are needed.
- **Power supply redundancy ($n+1$ redundancy)**—Add one power supply (reserve power supply). This form of power redundancy provides a reserve power supply that can replace any active power supply that goes offline.
- **Input source redundancy (grid redundancy)**—Add enough power supplies (reserve power supplies) to at least equal the total output of the active power supplies (number of power supplies calculated in Step 2). Typically, you would double the number of power supplies. You must plan for a second power source for the reserve power supplies. For example, if you calculate that you need two 3-kW power supplies for 6 kW of available power, you need another two 3-kW power supplies for 6 kW of reserve power (for a total of four 3-kW power supplies used for available and reserve power).
- **Full redundancy ($n+1$ and grid redundancy)**—Add enough power supplies (reserve power supplies) to at least equal the output of the active power supplies (number of power supplies calculated in Step 2). For power supply ($n+1$) redundancy, ensure that you have at least one extra power supply. For input-source (grid) redundancy, you will probably double the number of power supplies. You must plan for a second power source with at least the same amount of input power for the reserve power supplies. For example, if you calculate that you need two 3-kW power supplies for 6 kW of active power, then you need another two 3-kW power supplies for 6 kW of reserve power (for a total of four 3-kW power supplies used for active and reserve power). Either one of the reserve power supplies can replace any of the active power supplies.

Step 4 Be sure that the power source circuits are dedicated to the switch and not to other electrical equipment.

For combined power mode (no power redundancy) or power supply ($n+1$) redundancy, you need only one dedicated circuit. The requirements for each circuit are listed in the following table.

Table 2: Circuit Requirements for 3-kW Power Supplies

Power Supply		Number of Circuits	Requirement for Each Circuit
AC Power Supplies			
3-kW power supply	(N77-AC-3.0KW)	1	20 A at 110 VAC or 220 VAC
DC Power Supplies			
3-kW power supply	(N77-DC-3.0KW)	1	20A

Table 3: Circuit Requirements for 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supplies

Power Supply		Number of Circuits	Requirement for Each Circuit
3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC power supply	(N77-HV-3.5KW)	1	20 A at 110 VAC, 210 VAC, 220/230 VAC and 277 VAC or 20 A at 210 VDC, 220/240 VDC and 380 VDC

Step 5 Plan the placement of the input power receptacles within reach of the power cables used for each power supply (see the following table for the maximum distances).

Typically, power receptacles are placed on the rack with the switch. If the DC power source is further than allowed by the DC power cables, you can install a power interface unit (PIU) in the rack with the switch and connect that to the power source with other cabling.

Power Supply	Maximum Distance Between Receptacle and Power Supply
All AC power supplies	12 feet (3.6 m)
HVAC/HVDC 3.5-kW power supplies	14 feet (4.26 m)
DC 3-kW power supplies	Determined by the length of the power cord that you supply.

Rack and Cabinet Requirements

You can install the following types of racks or cabinets for your switch:

- Standard perforated cabinets
- Solid-walled cabinets with a roof fan tray (bottom to top cooling)



Note Installation clearance requirements for solid-wall cabinets are not in the scope of this guide. Such installations have to be custom-engineered by a cooling professional. The customised configuration should satisfy the requirements mentioned in the [Preparing the Site](#) and the [Switch Specifications](#) sections.

- Standard open four-post Telco racks
- Standard open two-post Telco racks

To correctly install the switch in a cabinet that is located in a hot-aisle/cold-aisle environment, you should fit the cabinet with baffles to prevent exhaust air from recirculating into the chassis air intake.

Work with your cabinet vendors to determine which of their cabinets meet the following requirements or see the Cisco Technical Assistance Center (TAC) for recommendations:

- Use a standard 19-inch, four-post Electronic Industries Alliance (EIA) cabinet or rack with mounting rails that conform to English universal hole spacing per section 1 of the ANSI/EIA-310-D-1992 standard.
- The height of the rack or cabinet must accommodate the 9-RU (15.75 inches or 40.0 cm) height of the switch and its bottom support bracket.
- The depth of a four-post rack must be 24 to 32 inches (61.0 to 81.3 cm) between the front and rear mounting brackets.
- Required clearances between the chassis and the edges of its rack or the interior of its cabinet are as follows:
 - 7.5 inches (19.1 cm) between the front of the chassis and the front of the rack or interior of the cabinet (required for cabling).

- 3.0 inches (7.6 cm) between the rear of the chassis and the perforated rear door of the cabinet (required for airflow in the cabinet if used).



Note This requirement does not apply to enclosures which have a solid rear door or wall with other exhaust configurations.

- No clearance is required between the chassis and the sides of the rack or cabinet (no side airflow).

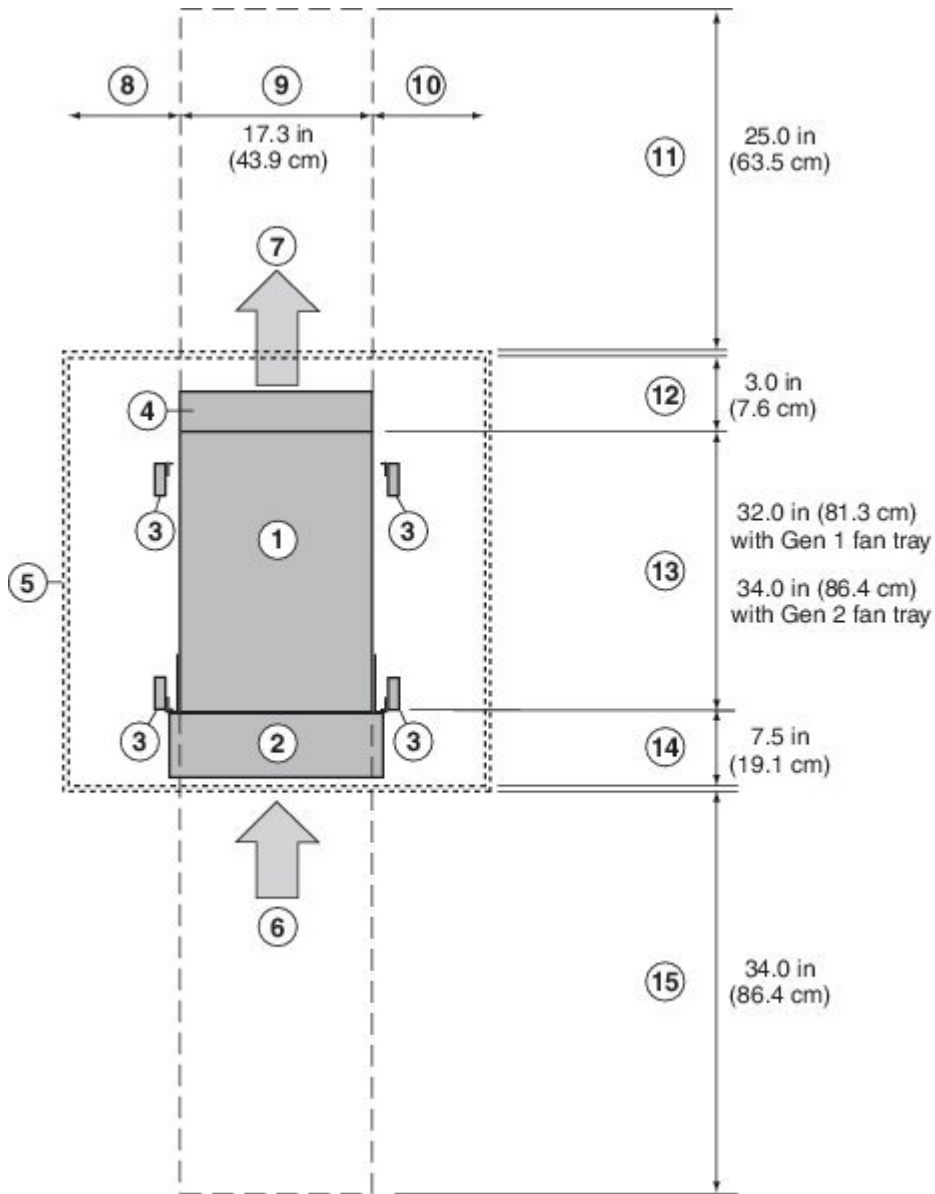
Additionally, you must consider the following site requirements for the rack:

- Power receptacles must be located within reach of the power cords used with the switch.
 - AC power supplies
 - Power cords for 3-kW AC power supplies are 8 to 12 feet (2.5 to 3.6 m) long.
 - DC power supplies
 - Power cords for 3.0-kW DC power supplies are supplied and dimensioned by the customer.
 - HVAC/HVDC power supplies
 - Power cords for 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC power supplies are 14 feet (4.26 m) long.
- Clearance required for cables that connect to as many as 400 ports (in addition to the cabling required for other devices in the same rack). These cables must not block access to any removable chassis modules or block airflow into or out of the chassis. Route the cables through the cable management frames on the left and right sides of the chassis.
- Where necessary, have a seismic rating of Network Equipment Building Standards (NEBS) Zone 3 or Zone 4, per GR-63-CORE if required.
- Minimum gross load rating of 2000 lb (907.2 kg) (static load rating) if supporting two switches.

Clearance Requirements

You must provide the chassis with adequate clearance between the chassis and any other rack, device, or structure so that you can properly install the chassis, route cables, provide airflow, and maintain the switch. For the clearances required for an installation of this chassis, see the following figure.

Figure 4: Clearances Required Around the Chassis



304388

1	Chassis	9	Chassis width
2	Cable management frames	10	No right side clearance required (no airflow on right side)
3	Vertical rack-mount posts and rails	11	Rear service clearance required to replace fan trays and fabric modules
4	Area used for fan tray handles at the rear of the chassis (allow 2 inches [5 cm])	12	Airflow clearance area required at the rear of the chassis within the cabinet (if a cabinet is used)

5	Nearest object or inside of cabinet (no side clearance required)	13	Chassis depth Note The chassis depth will increase by 2 inches when the 76mm Gen 2 fan tray (N77-C7706-FAN-2) is used.
6	Air intake from the cold aisle for all modules and power supplies	14	Clearance required between the front of the chassis and the inside of the cabinet (if used) or the edge of the cold aisle (if no cabinet) for the cable management frames and the optional front doors
7	Air exhaust to the hot aisle for all modules and power supplies	15	Front service clearance required for installing the chassis and replacing the modules on the front of the chassis
8	No left side clearance required (no airflow on left side)		



Note [Figure 4: Clearances Required Around the Chassis](#), on page 12 shows the clearance requirements for conventional cold-aisle to hot-aisle systems which include rack enclosures with perforated front and rear doors. The information given above does not apply to enclosures which have a solid rear or front door or wall with other inlet or exhaust configurations. We recommend consulting a cooling professional if a solid rear or front door is used.



CHAPTER 3

Installing the Switch Chassis

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Installing a Rack or Cabinet, on page 15](#)
- [Unpacking and Inspecting a New Switch, on page 16](#)
- [Attaching Bottom-Support Rails to a Two-Post Rack, on page 17](#)
- [Attaching Bottom-Support Rails to a Four-Post Rack, on page 19](#)
- [Installing the Chassis in a Two-Post Rack, on page 21](#)
- [Installing the Chassis on a Four-Post Rack or Cabinet, on page 26](#)
- [Grounding a Switch Chassis, on page 31](#)
- [Installing Cable Management Frames onto the Chassis, on page 36](#)
- [Attaching the Front Door to the Chassis, on page 38](#)
- [Installing Air Filters, on page 40](#)

Installing a Rack or Cabinet

Before you install the switch, you must install a standard four-post, 19-inch EIA data center rack (or a cabinet that contains such a rack) [Rack and Cabinet Requirements](#).

Step 1 Bolt the rack to the concrete subfloor before moving the chassis onto it.

Note Stability hazard. The rack stabilizing mechanism must be in place, or the rack must be bolted to the floor before you slide the unit out for servicing. Failure to stabilize the rack can cause the rack to tip over.

Statement 1048

Step 2 If the rack has bonded construction, connect it to the earth ground. This action enables you to easily ground the switch and its components and to ground your electrostatic discharge (ESD) wrist strap to prevent damaging discharges when you handle ungrounded components before installing them.

Step 3 If you need access to the source power at the rack, include either AC power receptacles or a DC power interface unit (PIU) with the amperage required by the switch that you are installing. .

If you are using DC power, be sure that the DC power supply is grounded and that there is direct access to the facility DC power or indirect access through a power interface unit (PIU). You must connect the DC power supply to the earth ground before you connect it to the facility DC power.

Note Take care when connecting units to the supply circuit so that wiring is not overloaded.

Statement 1018

Note If you are using the combined power mode or power-supply redundancy, you need only one power source. If you are using input-source redundancy or full redundancy, you need two power sources.

Unpacking and Inspecting a New Switch

Before you install a new chassis, you need to unpack and inspect it to be sure that you have all the items that you ordered and verify that the switch was not damaged during shipment. If anything is damaged or missing, contact your customer representative immediately.



Caution When you handle the chassis or its components, you must follow ESD protocol at all times to prevent ESD damage. This protocol includes but is not limited to wearing an ESD wrist strap that you connect to the earth ground.



Tip Do not discard the shipping container when you unpack the switch. Flatten the shipping cartons and store them with the pallet used for the system. If you need to move or ship the system in the future, you will need these containers.

Step 1 Compare the shipment to the equipment list that is provided by your customer service representative and verify that you have received all of the ordered items.

The shipment should include boxes for the following:

- System chassis, which includes the following installed components:
 - 1 or 2 supervisor modules
 - 1 to 4 I/O modules
 - Up to 6 fabric modules
 - 3 fan trays
 - 1 to 4 power supply units
- Switch accessory kit
 - To see a list of what is included in this kit, see [Cisco Nexus 7706 Switch Accessory Kit, on page 189](#).
- Cable management frames
 - Left and right side frames
 - Top frame
 - M4 x 12 mm flat-head Phillips screws (12)

- Front door kit — Optional (N77-C7706-FDK)
 - Front door (1) (69-2532-01)
 - M3 x 8 mm pan-head screws (2) (48-0393-01)
- Air filter kit — Optional (N77-C7706-AFLT)
 - Air filter (1) for the front door
 - Door-side brush filters (2)
 - Cable-management frame brush filters (2)
 - M4 x 12 mm flat-head Phillips screws (12)

Step 2 Check the contents of each box for damage.

Step 3 If you notice any discrepancies or damage, send the following information to your customer service representative by email:

- Invoice number of the shipper (see the packing slip)
- Model and serial number of the missing or damaged unit
- Description of the problem and how it affects the installation

Attaching Bottom-Support Rails to a Two-Post Rack

The bottom-support rails support the weight of the switch chassis in the rack or cabinet. To maximize the stability of the rack, you must attach these rails at the lowest possible rack unit (RU).



Warning

To prevent bodily injury when mounting or servicing this unit in a rack, you must take special precautions to ensure that the system remains stable. The following guidelines are provided to ensure your safety:

- This unit should be mounted at the bottom of the rack if it is the only unit in the rack.
- When mounting this unit in a partially filled rack, load the rack from the bottom to the top with the heaviest component at the bottom of the rack.
- If the rack is provided with stabilizing devices, install the stabilizers before mounting or servicing the unit in the rack.

Statement 1006

Before you begin

Before you can install the bottom support rails for the chassis, you must do the following:

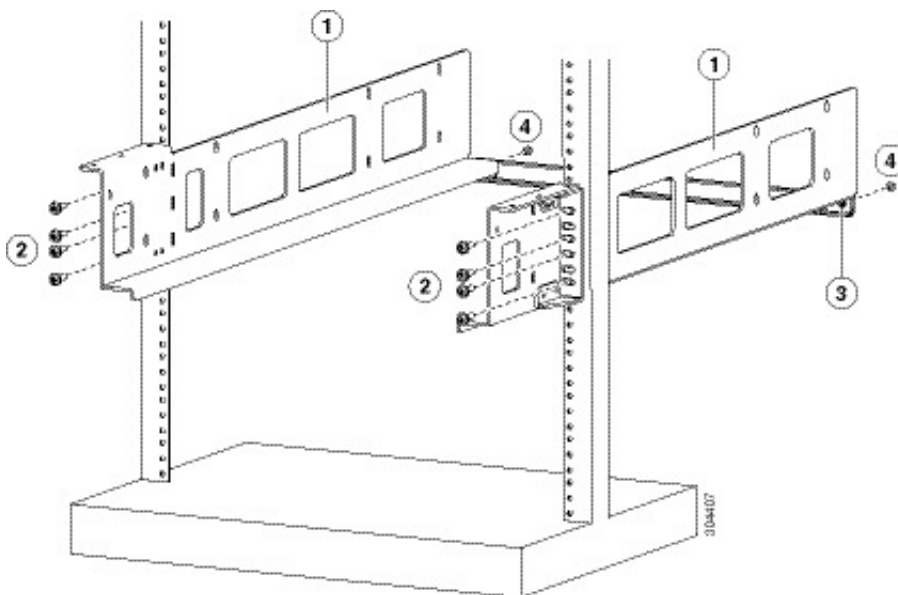
- Verify that a two-post rack is installed and secured to the concrete subfloor (see [Installing a Rack or Cabinet](#)).

Attaching Bottom-Support Rails to a Two-Post Rack

- If any other devices are stored in the rack or cabinet, verify that they are located below where you plan to install the switch. Also, verify that lighter devices in the same rack are located above where you plan to install this switch.
- Verify that the center-mount bottom-support rails kit (N77-C7706-CMK) was ordered and shipped with the chassis.

- Step 1** Position one of the two bottom-support rails at the lowest possible RU in the rack or cabinet. Be sure there is at least 9 RU of vertical space above the rails to install the chassis.
- Step 2** Use a manual Phillips torque screwdriver to attach the bottom-support rail to the rack using four M6 x 19 mm or 12-24 x 3/4 inch screws and tighten each screw to 40 in. lbs (4.5 N.m) of torque.

Figure 5: Attaching Bottom-Support Rails to a Rack



1	Adjustable bottom-support rails (2)	3	Cross bar aligned to the lower back of both rails
2	M6 x 19 mm (or 12-24 x 3/4 in.) Phillips screws (6 to 8 per rail)	3	M4 x 8 mm screws (1 for each of two ends of the cross bar)

- Step 3** Repeat Steps 1 and 2 to attach the other bottom-support rail to the rack.
- Note** Make sure that the two bottom-support rails are level with one another. If they are not level, adjust the higher rail down to the level of the lower rail.
- Step 4** Align the crossbar to the lower back of the two bottom-support rails and use two M4 x 8 mm screws to attach it to each rail (one screw for each rail). See Callouts 3 and 4 in the previous figure for the placement of the crossbar and its screws.

What to do next

When the bottom-support rails are installed at the lowest possible RU and are level, you are ready to install the chassis in the rack or cabinet.

Attaching Bottom-Support Rails to a Four-Post Rack

The bottom-support rails support the weight of the switch chassis in the rack or cabinet. To maximize the stability of the rack, you must attach these rails at the lowest possible rack unit (RU).

**Warning**

To prevent bodily injury when mounting or servicing this unit in a rack, you must take special precautions to ensure that the system remains stable. The following guidelines are provided to ensure your safety:

- This unit should be mounted at the bottom of the rack if it is the only unit in the rack.
- When mounting this unit in a partially filled rack, load the rack from the bottom to the top with the heaviest component at the bottom of the rack.
- If the rack is provided with stabilizing devices, install the stabilizers before mounting or servicing the unit in the rack.

Statement 1006

Before you begin

Before you can install the bottom support rails for the chassis, you must do the following:

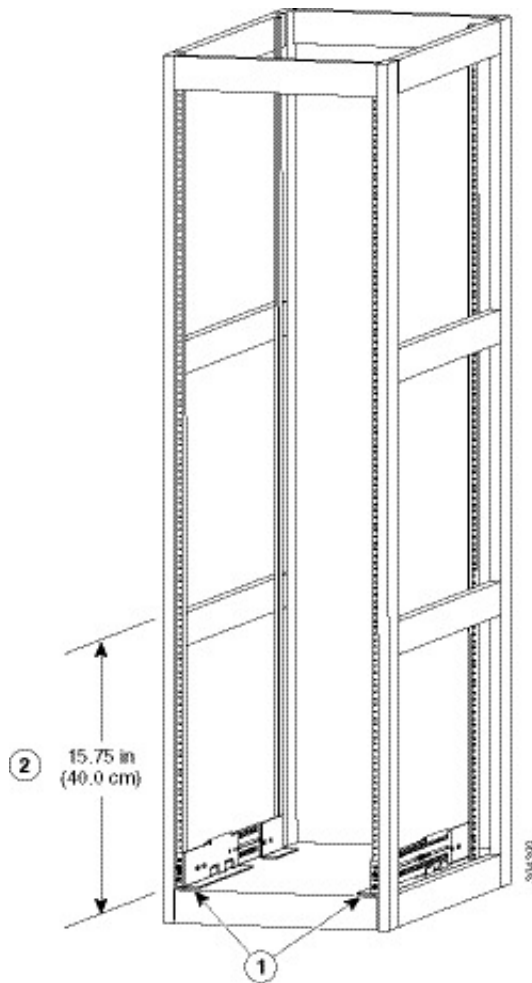
- Verify that a four-post rack or cabinet is installed and secured to the concrete subfloor (see [Installing a Rack or Cabinet](#)).
- If any other devices are stored in the rack or cabinet, verify that they are located below where you plan to install the switch. Also, verify that lighter devices in the same rack are located above where you plan to install this switch.
- Verify that the bottom-support rails kit is included in the switch accessory kit .

Step 1

Position one of the two adjustable bottom-support rails at the lowest possible RU in the rack or cabinet and adjust the length of the rail so that it stretches from the outer edges of the front and rear vertical mounting rails. Be sure there is at least 9 RU of vertical space above the rails to install the chassis (see the following figure).

You can expand the rail so that its mounting brackets are spaced between 24 to 32 inches (61.0 to 81.3 cm).

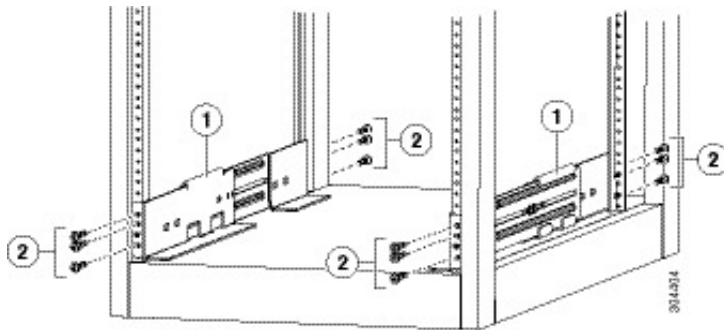
Figure 6: Positioning Bottom-Support Rails



1	Position two bottom-support rails at the lowest RU on the rack.	2	Allow at least 15.75 inches (40.0 cm) (9 RU) for each chassis.
---	---	---	--

Step 2 Use a manual Phillips torque screwdriver to attach the bottom-support rail to the rack using at least three (four if possible) M6 x 19 mm or 12-24 x 3/4 inch screws for each end of the rail (using a total of 6 to 8 screws for the rail as shown in the following figure) and tighten each screw to 40 in. lbs (4.5 N.m) of torque.

Figure 7: Attaching Bottom-Support Rails to a Rack



1	Adjustable bottom-support rails (2)	2	M6 x 19 mm (or 12-24 x 3/4 in.) Phillips screws (6 to 8 per rail)
---	-------------------------------------	---	---

Note At least three of the screw holes on each end of the bottom-support rail align to the mounting rail. Use at least three screws (four if possible) on each end of each bottom support rail.

Step 3 Repeat Steps 1 and 2 to attach the other bottom-support rail to the rack. The other rail/bracket need to be flipped 180 degrees and installed to the other side of the rack because both the left and right sides are the same rail/bracket.

Note Make sure that the two bottom-support rails are level with one another. If they are not level, adjust the higher rail down to the level of the lower rail.

What to do next

When the bottom-support rails are installed at the lowest possible RU and are level, you are ready to install the chassis in the rack or cabinet.

Installing the Chassis in a Two-Post Rack

Before you begin

- Verify that the chassis shipment is complete and undamaged.
- Verify that a two-post rack is installed and secured to the subfloor.



Warning The rack stabilizing mechanism must be in place, or the rack must be bolted to the floor before installation or servicing. Failure to stabilize the rack can cause bodily injury.

Statement 1048

- Verify that the bottom-support rails have been attached to the lowest possible RU in the rack or cabinet and there is 9 RU (15.75 inches [40.0 cm]) of space above the rails to install the chassis.

- If there are other devices in the rack, verify that the devices that are heavier than this chassis are installed below where you are going to install the chassis and lighter devices are installed above where you are going to install the chassis.
- Verify that the data center ground is accessible where you are installing the chassis.
- Verify that you have the following tools and equipment:
 - Mechanical lift capable of lifting the full weight of the chassis and its installed modules



Note Fully loaded, the chassis can weigh up to 325 lb (147.5 kg). You can lighten the chassis for easier moving by removing its power supplies, fan trays, and fabric modules. To determine the full weight of the chassis and the appropriate weight rating for the mechanical lift, see [Weights and Quantities for the Chassis, Modules, Fan Trays, and Power Supplies](#), on page 138.



Caution You must use a mechanical lift or floor jack to elevate a switch weighing over 120 pounds (55 kg).

- Manual Phillips-head torque screwdriver



Note You should also have at least two persons to push the chassis when you slide it onto the rack.



Warning To prevent bodily injury when mounting or servicing this unit in a rack, you must take special precautions to ensure that the system remains stable. The following guidelines are provided to ensure your safety:

- This unit should be mounted at the bottom of the rack if it is the only unit in the rack.
- When mounting this unit in a partially filled rack, load the rack from the bottom to the top with the heaviest component at the bottom of the rack.
- If the rack is provided with stabilizing devices, install the stabilizers before mounting or servicing the unit in the rack.

Statement 1006

Step 1

If you need to make the chassis as light as possible for moving, you can optionally remove the fabric modules, fan trays, and power supplies.

- To remove a power supply, follow these steps:
 - a. Push and hold the release handle on the power supply to the left.
 - b. Pull the power supply about two inches (about 5 cm) out of the chassis.

- c. Place one hand under the power supply to support its weight and pull the power supply out of the chassis.
- d. Place the power supply on an antistatic surface.
- To remove a fan tray, follow these steps:
 - a. Unscrew the four captive screws on the front of the fan tray (one captive screw in each corner of the front of the fan tray).
 - b. Hold both handles on the fan tray with both of your hands and pull the fan tray out of the chassis.
 - c. Place the fan tray on an antistatic surface.
- To remove a fabric module, follow these steps:
 - Note** Before you can remove a fabric module, you must remove the fan tray that is installed in front of it.
 - a. Press the lever eject button found in the middle of the front of the module.
 - b. Rotate both of the levers away from the fabric module.
 - c. When the other end of each lever is no longer holding onto the chassis, pull the two levers to slide the module a couple inches out of the chassis.
 - d. Rotate the two levers back to the fabric module. Each lever will click when locked in place.
 - e. Place one hand on the front of the module and place your other hand under the module to support its weight.
 - f. Slide the module out of the chassis and place the module on an antistatic surface.

Step 2

Load the chassis onto a mechanical lift or floor jack as follows:

- a) Position the mechanical lift next to the shipping pallet that holds the chassis.
- b) Elevate the lift platform to the level of the bottom of the chassis (or no more than 1/4 inch [0.635 cm] below the bottom of the chassis).
- c) Use two persons to slide the chassis fully onto the lift so that the side of the chassis touches or is close to the vertical rails on the lift. Make sure that the front and rear of the chassis are unobstructed so you can easily push the chassis into the rack.

Warning To prevent personal injury or damage to the chassis, never attempt to lift or tilt the chassis using the handles on modules, such as power supplies, fans, or cards. These types of handles are not designed to support the weight of the unit.

Statement 1032

Caution To lift the chassis, use a mechanical lift. Do not use the handles on the side of the chassis (the handles are not rated for lifting over 200 pounds [91 kg]). Use the side handles for only repositioning the chassis after it is already on the mechanical lift or in the rack or cabinet.

Step 3

Use the mechanical lift to move and align the rear of the chassis to the front of the rack or cabinet.

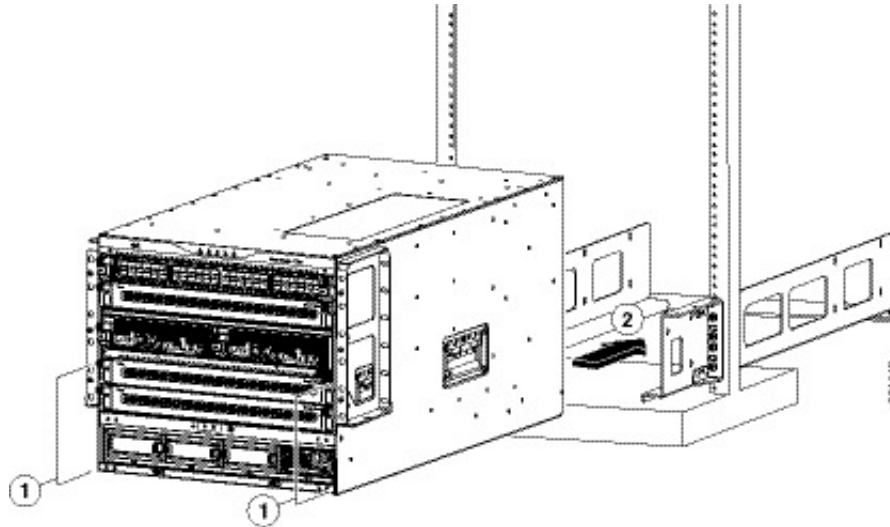
Make sure that the bottom of the chassis is elevated to the height of the bottom-support rails or no more than 1/4 inch (0.6 cm) above the rails.

Step 4

Push the chassis halfway onto the rack or cabinet.

Use two persons to push the chassis onto the bottom-support rails. Push the lower half of the front side of the chassis so that the back side enters the rack first, and push until the chassis is halfway onto the rack (see the following figure). Ensure that the chassis does not get caught on any of the expansion edges of the bottom-support rail.

Figure 8: Moving a Chassis onto a Rack or Cabinet



1	Push the sides of the lower half of the front side of the chassis.	2	Push the chassis into the rack until its mounting bracket touches the vertical mounting rails on the rack.
---	--	---	--

Tip To adjust the placement of the chassis on the bottom-support rails, you can use the handles on the sides of the chassis.

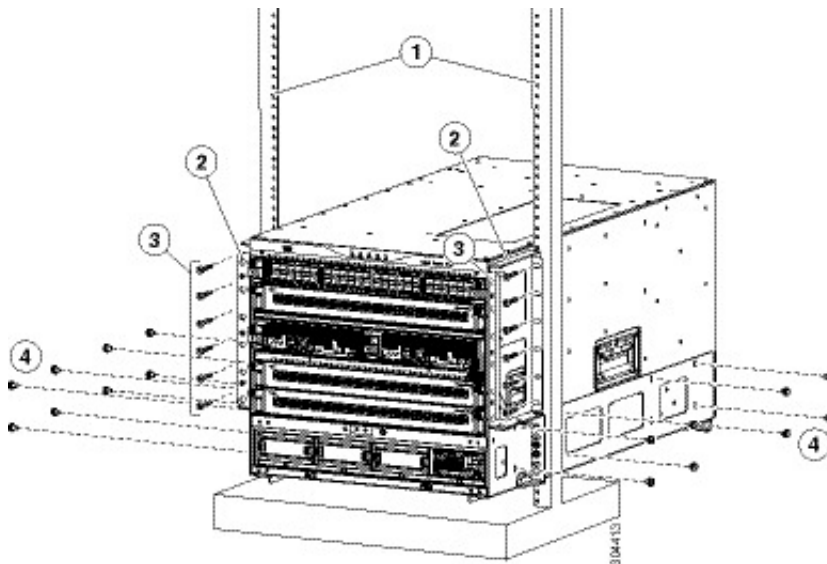
Step 5 If the mechanical lift is raised above the height of the bottom-support rails, gently lower it to the level of the rails or no more than 1/4 inch (0.6 cm) below the rails.

This action helps to prevent the bottom of the chassis from getting caught on the bottom expansion edges of the bottom-support rails.

Step 6 Push the chassis all the way onto the rack so that the vertical mounting brackets on the chassis come in contact with the vertical mounting rails on the rack.

Step 7 Use seven M6 x 19 mm or 24 x 3/4-inch screws to attach each of the two vertical mounting brackets on the chassis to the two vertical mounting rails on the rack (total of 14 screws). See Callout 2 in the following figure.

Figure 9: Attaching the Chassis to the Rack



1	Vertical mounting rails on the rack	3	Six M6 x 19 mm or 10-24 x 3/4 in. Phillips screws used to attach each side bracket to a front mounting rail (use a total of 12 screws)
2	Mounting brackets for two-post racks	4	Eight M6 x 10 mm screws used to attach each bottom support rail to the chassis (use a total of 16 screws for both rails)

Step 8 Use eight M6 x 10 mm screws to attach the bottom-support rails to the chassis (use a total of 16 screws for both bottom support rails). See Callout 4 in the previous figure.

Step 9 If you removed any fabric modules before moving the chassis, replace each one in the chassis as follows:

- Holding the front of the fabric module (the side with the LEDs), turn the module so that the front side is vertical.

Note The top of the module has an alignment bracket running from the rear to the front. The electrical connectors will be at the bottom.
- Align the rear of the fabric module to an open fabric slot and insert the bracket on top of the module into the track at the top of the slot.

Note If there are only three fabric modules to install, install them in fabric slots 1, 3, and 5.
- Slide the module part way into the slot.
- Press the ejector button on the front of the module, to release the levers from the front of the module.
- Rotate the levers away from the front of the module and hold them while sliding the module all the way into the slot.
- Simultaneously rotate both levers to the front of the module. They click when locked to the front of the module.

Step 10 If you removed any fan trays before moving the chassis, reinstall each one in the chassis as follows:

- Holding each of the two handles on the fan tray with your two hands, align the fan tray to an open fan tray slot.

Note The two alignment brackets on top of the fan tray should align to two tracks at the top of the slot.
- Slide the fan tray into the slot until the front of the fan tray comes in contact with the rear of the chassis.

Note The two alignment pins on the fan tray (on the top and one on the bottom) should go into holes in the chassis and the four captive screws on the fan tray should align to screw holes in the chassis.

- c) Screw in the four captive screws to the chassis and tighten each screw to 8 in-lb (0.9 N·m).

Step 11

If you removed any power supplies before moving the chassis, reinstall each one as follows:

- a) Determine which power supply slots to fill and ensure that each of those slots is open.

If you are using the combined or power supply redundancy mode, you can use any slot for the power supply that you are installing. If you are using the input-source or full redundancy mode, you must group the power supplies that are to be connected to the same grid on either the left or right power supply slots in the chassis (that is, place the power supplies for grid A in slots 1 or 2 or both slots and place the power supplies for grid B in slots 3 or 4 or both slots).

- b) Place one hand on the front of the power supply and place your other hand under it to support its weight.
c) Align the power supply to an open power supply slot.

Note The alignment bracket on top of the power supply should align to a track at the top of the slot and a bar at the bottom of the power supply should be guided by a track at the bottom of the slot.

- d) Slide the power supply all the way into the slot until its release handle clicks and the module stops.

Installing the Chassis on a Four-Post Rack or Cabinet

Before you begin

- Verify that the chassis shipment is complete and undamaged.
- Verify that a rack or cabinet is installed and secured to the subfloor.



Warning The rack stabilizing mechanism must be in place, or the rack must be bolted to the floor before installation or servicing. Failure to stabilize the rack can cause bodily injury.

Statement 1048

- Verify that the bottom-support rails have been attached to the lowest possible RU in the rack or cabinet and there is 9 RU (15.75 inches [40.0 cm]) of space above the rails to install the chassis.
- If there are other devices in the rack, verify that the devices that are heavier than this chassis are installed below where you are going to install the chassis and lighter devices are installed above where you are going to install the chassis.
- Verify that the data center ground is accessible where you are installing the chassis.
- Verify that you have the following tools and equipment:
 - Mechanical lift capable of lifting the full weight of the chassis and its installed modules



Note Fully loaded, the chassis can weigh up to 325 lb (147.5 kg). You can lighten the chassis for easier moving by removing its power supplies, fan trays, and fabric modules. To determine the full weight of the chassis and the appropriate weight rating for the mechanical lift, see [Weights and Quantities for the Chassis, Modules, Fan Trays, and Power Supplies](#), on page 138.



Caution You must use a mechanical lift or floor jack to elevate a switch weighing over 120 pounds (55 kg).

- Phillips-head torque screwdriver
- Bottom-support rails kit (shipped with the accessory kit)

Part of this kit has already been used to install the bottom-support rails. You should still have 14 12-24 x 3/4-inch or M6 x 19 mm Phillips screws, which are required for attaching the chassis to the rack.



Note You should also have at least two persons to push the chassis when you slide it onto the rack.



Warning To prevent bodily injury when mounting or servicing this unit in a rack, you must take special precautions to ensure that the system remains stable. The following guidelines are provided to ensure your safety:

- This unit should be mounted at the bottom of the rack if it is the only unit in the rack.
- When mounting this unit in a partially filled rack, load the rack from the bottom to the top with the heaviest component at the bottom of the rack.
- If the rack is provided with stabilizing devices, install the stabilizers before mounting or servicing the unit in the rack.

Statement 1006

Step 1

If you need to make the chassis as light as possible for moving, you can optionally remove the fabric modules, fan trays, and power supplies.

- To remove a power supply, follow these steps:
 - a. Slide the handle in the middle of the ejector lever towards the end of the lever and rotate the lever away from the power supply.
 - b. Pull the power supply a couple of inches (about 5 cm) out of the chassis.
 - c. Place one hand under the power supply to support its weight and pull the power supply out of the chassis.
 - d. Place the power supply on an antistatic surface.

- To remove a fan tray, follow these steps:
 - a. Unscrew the four captive screws on the front of the fan tray (one captive screw in each corner of the front of the fan tray).
 - b. Hold both handles on the fan tray with both of your hands and pull the fan tray out of the chassis.
 - c. Place the fan tray on an antistatic surface.

- To remove a fabric module, follow these steps:

Note Before you can remove a fabric module, you must remove the fan tray that is installed in front of it.

- a. Press the lever eject button found in the middle of the front of the module.
- b. Rotate both of the levers away from the fabric module.
- c. When the other end of each lever is no longer holding onto the chassis, pull the two levers to slide the module a couple inches out of the chassis.
- d. Rotate the two levers back to the fabric module. Each lever will click when locked in place.
- e. Place one hand on the front of the module and place your other hand under the module to support its weight.
- f. Slide the module out of the chassis and place the module on an antistatic surface.

Step 2

Load the chassis onto a mechanical lift or floor jack as follows:

- a) Position the mechanical lift next to the shipping pallet that holds the chassis.
- b) Elevate the lift platform to the level of the bottom of the chassis (or no more than 1/4 inch [0.635 cm] below the bottom of the chassis).
- c) Use two persons to slide the chassis fully onto the lift so that the side of the chassis touches or is close to the vertical rails on the lift. Make sure that the front and rear of the chassis are unobstructed so you can easily push the chassis into the rack.

Warning To prevent personal injury or damage to the chassis, never attempt to lift or tilt the chassis using the handles on modules, such as power supplies, fans, or cards. These types of handles are not designed to support the weight of the unit.

Statement 1032

Caution To lift the chassis, use a mechanical lift. Do not use the handles on the side of the chassis (the handles are not rated for lifting over 200 pounds [91 kg]). Use the side handles for only repositioning the chassis after it is already on the mechanical lift or in the rack or cabinet.

Step 3

Use the mechanical lift to move and align the rear of the chassis to the front of the rack or cabinet.

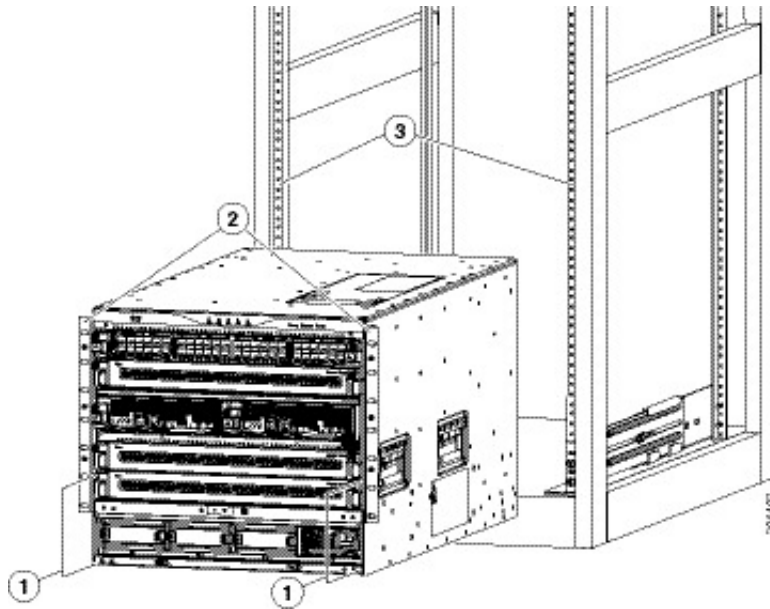
Make sure that the bottom of the chassis is elevated to the height of the bottom-support rails or no more than 1/4 inch (0.6 cm) above the rails.

Step 4

Push the chassis halfway onto the rack or cabinet.

Use two persons to push the chassis onto the bottom-support rails. Push the lower half of the front side of the chassis so that the back side enters the rack first, and push until the chassis is halfway onto the rack (see the following figure). Ensure that the chassis does not get caught on any of the expansion edges of the bottom-support rail.

Figure 10: Moving a Chassis onto a Rack or Cabinet



1	Push the sides of the lower half of the front side of the chassis.	3	Rack vertical mounting rails.
2	Chassis mounting brackets.		

Tip To adjust the placement of the chassis on the bottom-support rails, you can use the handles on the sides of the chassis.

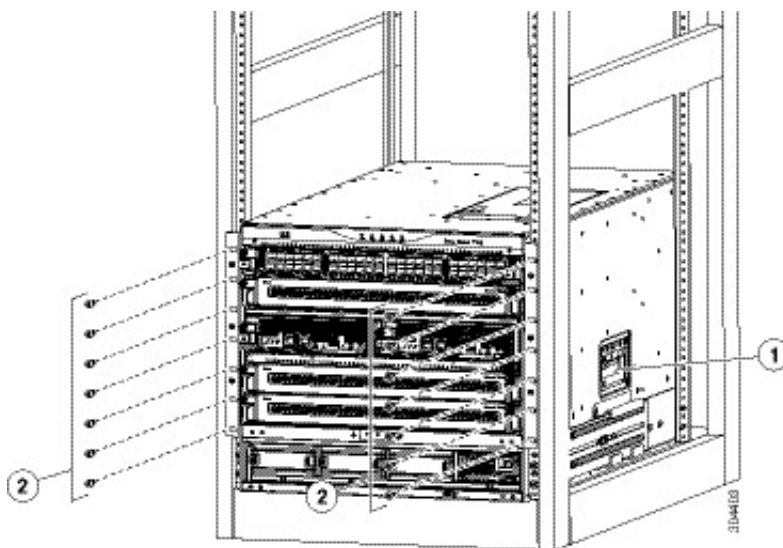
Step 5 If the mechanical lift is raised above the height of the bottom-support rails, gently lower it to the level of the rails or no more than 1/4 inch (0.6 cm) below the rails.

This action helps to prevent the bottom of the chassis from getting caught on the bottom expansion edges of the bottom-support rails.

Step 6 Push the chassis all the way onto the rack so that the vertical mounting brackets on the chassis come in contact with the vertical mounting rails on the rack.

Step 7 Use seven M6 x 19 mm or 24 x 3/4-inch screws to attach each of the two vertical mounting brackets on the chassis to the two vertical mounting rails on the rack (total of 14 screws). See Callout 2 in the following figure.

Figure 11: Attaching the Chassis to the Rack



1	Handles used to adjust the chassis placement	2	Six M6 x 19 mm or 10-24 x 3/4 in. Phillips screws used to attach each side bracket to a front mounting rail (use a total of 12 screws)
---	--	---	--

Step 8

If you removed any fabric modules before moving the chassis, replace each one in the chassis as follows:

- a) Holding the front of the fabric module (the side with the LEDs), turn the module so that the front side is vertical.

Note The top of the module has an alignment bracket running from the rear to the front. The electrical connectors will be at the bottom.

- b) Align the rear of the fabric module to an open fabric slot and insert the bracket on top of the module into the track at the top of the slot.

Note If there are only three fabric modules to install, install them in fabric slots 1, 3, and 5.

- c) Slide the module part way into the slot.
 d) Press the ejector button on the front of the module, to release the levers from the front of the module.
 e) Rotate the levers away from the front of the module and hold them while sliding the module all the way into the slot.
 f) Simultaneously rotate both levers to the front of the module. They click when locked to the front of the module.

Step 9

If you removed any fan trays before moving the chassis, reinstall each one in the chassis as follows:

- a) Holding each of the two handles on the fan tray with your two hands, align the fan tray to an open fan tray slot.

Note The two alignment brackets on top of the fan tray should align to two tracks at the top of the slot.

- b) Slide the fan tray into the slot until the front of the fan tray comes in contact with the rear of the chassis.

Note The two alignment pins on the fan tray (on the top and one on the bottom) should go into holes in the chassis and the four captive screws on the fan tray should align to screw holes in the chassis.

- c) Screw in the four captive screws to the chassis and tighten each screw to 8 in-lb (0.9 N·m).

Step 10

If you removed any power supplies before moving the chassis, reinstall each one as follows:

- a) Determine which power supply slots to fill and ensure that each of those slots is open.

If you are using the combined or power supply redundancy mode, you can use any slot for the power supply that you are installing. If you are using input-source or full redundancy mode, you must group the power supplies that are to be connected to the same grid on either the left or right power supply slots in the chassis (that is, place the power supplies for grid A in slots 1 or 2 or both slots and place the power supplies for grid B in slots 3 or 4 or both slots).

- b) Place one hand on the front of the power supply and place your other hand under it to support its weight.
c) Align the power supply to an open power supply slot.

Note The alignment bracket on top of the power supply should align to a track at the top of the slot and a bar at the bottom of the power supply should be guided by a track at the bottom of the slot.

- d) Slide the power supply all the way into the slot until it stops.
e) Slide the handle in the middle of the ejector lever toward the end of the lever and rotate the lever to the front of the power supply. Release the middle handle.

Note The lever should grab the inside of the slot and push the power supply onto its mid plane connectors.

Note If you are using the combined power or power-supply redundancy mode, you can fill any power supply slot with the power supplies. If you are using input-source or full redundancy modes, you must place half of the power supplies in slots 1 and 2, and you must place the other half of the power supplies in slots 3 and 4 (half will be used for available power and the other half will be used for redundant power).

- f) Screw in the two captive screws on the front of the power supply to the chassis. Tighten each screw to 8 in-lb (0.9 N·m).

Grounding a Switch Chassis

The switch is fully grounded as soon as you connect the chassis and the power supplies to the earth ground in the following ways:

- You connect the chassis to either a fully-bonded, grounded rack or to the data center ground.



Note The system ground, also referred to as the network equipment building system (NEBS) ground, provides additional grounding for EMI shielding requirements and for the low-voltage supplies (DC-DC converters) on the modules. This grounding system is active even when the AC and HVAC/HVDC power cables are not connected to the system.

- You connect the AC and HVAC/HVDC power supplies to the earth ground automatically when you connect an AC or HVAC/HVDC power supply to an AC or HVAC/HVDC power source.

Before you begin

Before you can ground the chassis, you must have a connection to the earth ground for the data center building. If you installed the switch chassis into a bonded rack (see the rack manufacturer's instructions for more

information) that now has a connection to the data center earth ground, you can ground the chassis by connecting its grounding pad to the rack. Otherwise, you must connect the chassis grounding pad directly to the data center ground.

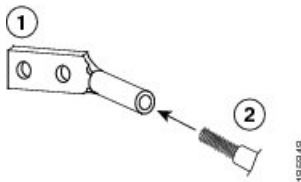
To connect the switch chassis to the data center ground, you need the following tools and materials:

- Grounding lug—A two-holed standard barrel lug that supports up to 6 AWG wire. This lug is supplied with the accessory kit.
- Grounding screws—Two M4 x 8 mm (metric) pan-head screws. These screws are shipped with the accessory kit.
- Grounding wire—Not supplied with the accessory kit. This wire should be sized to meet local and national installation requirements. Depending on the power supply and system, a 12 AWG to 6 AWG copper conductor is required for U.S. installations. We recommend that you use commercially available 6 AWG wire. The length of the grounding wire depends on the proximity of the switch to proper grounding facilities.
- Number 1 manual Phillips-head torque screwdriver.
- Crimping tool to crimp the grounding wire to the grounding lug.
- Wire-stripping tool to remove the insulation from the grounding wire.

Step 1 Use a wire-stripping tool to remove approximately 0.75 inch (19 mm) of the covering from the end of the grounding wire.

Step 2 Insert the stripped end of the grounding wire into the open end of the grounding lug as shown in the following figure.

Figure 12: Inserting a Grounding Wire in a Grounding Lug



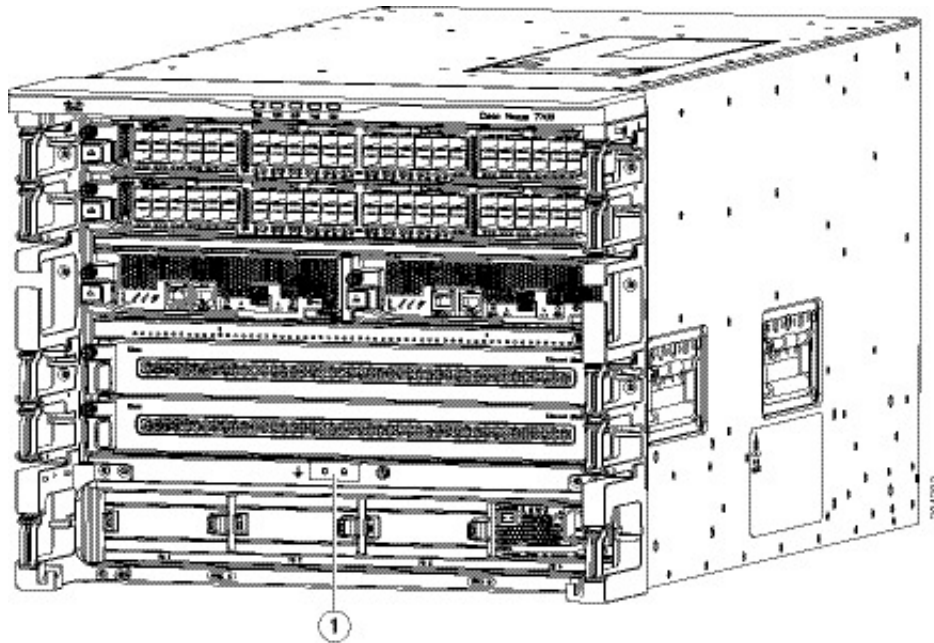
1	NRTL listed 45-degree grounding lug	2	Grounding cable with 0.75 in. (19 mm) of insulation stripped from one end
---	-------------------------------------	---	---

Step 3 Use the crimping tool to crimp the lug to the grounding wire. Verify that the ground wire is securely attached to the grounding lug by attempting to pull the wire out of the crimped lug.

Step 4 Secure the grounding wire lug to the grounding pad with two M4 screws, and tighten the screws to 11.5 to 15 in-lb (1.3 to 1.7 N·m) of torque.

The following figure shows the location of the grounding pad on the front of the chassis. There is another grounding pad on the other side of the chassis.

Figure 13: Grounding Pad Location on the Front of the Cisco Nexus 7706 Chassis



1	Grounding pad	
---	---------------	--

- Step 5** Prepare the other end of the grounding wire and connect it to an appropriate grounding point in your site to ensure an adequate earth ground for the switch. If the rack is fully bonded and grounded, connect the grounding wire as explained in the documentation provided by the vendor for the rack.

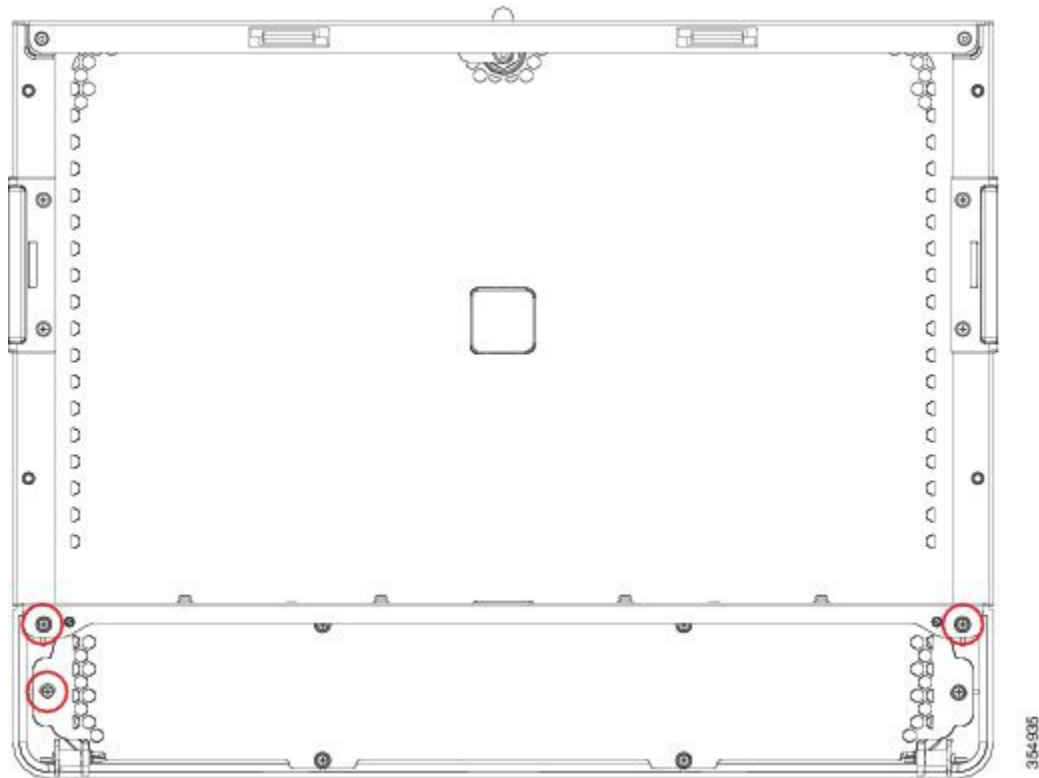
Grounding the Front ID Door



Note To comply with GR-1089, you have to bond the front ID door to the ground port on the chassis using the ground braid.

- Step 1** Remove 3 screws from the front industrial design (ID) door.
The following figure shows the 3 screws (circled) that have to be removed.

Figure 14: Front ID Door



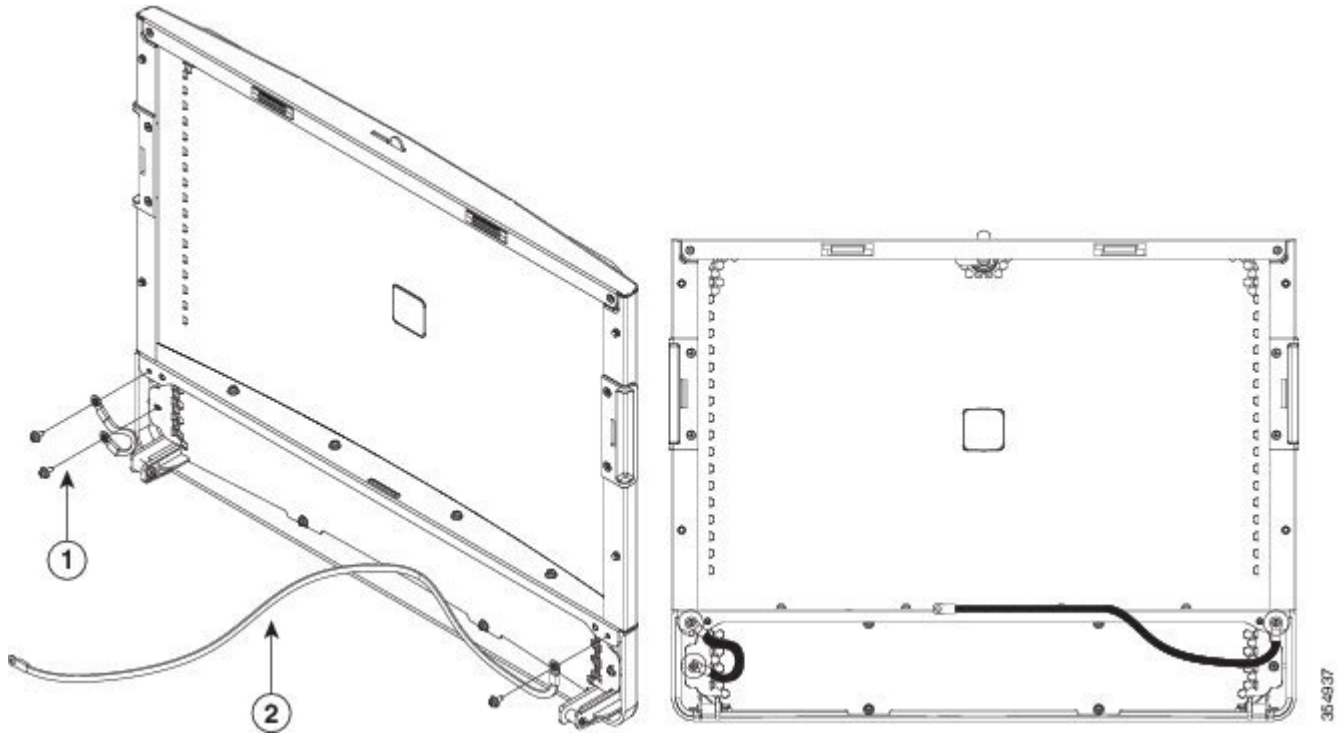
Step 2 Add the grounding cable to the left side of the front ID door to connect the top and bottom metal plates.

Step 3 Tighten the screw to 7 in-lb (0.79 N-m) of torque to provide proper bonding.

Step 4 Install another grounding cable to the right side of the front ID door.

The following figure shows the location of the 2 grounding cables.

Figure 15: Grounding Cable Location on the Front ID Door

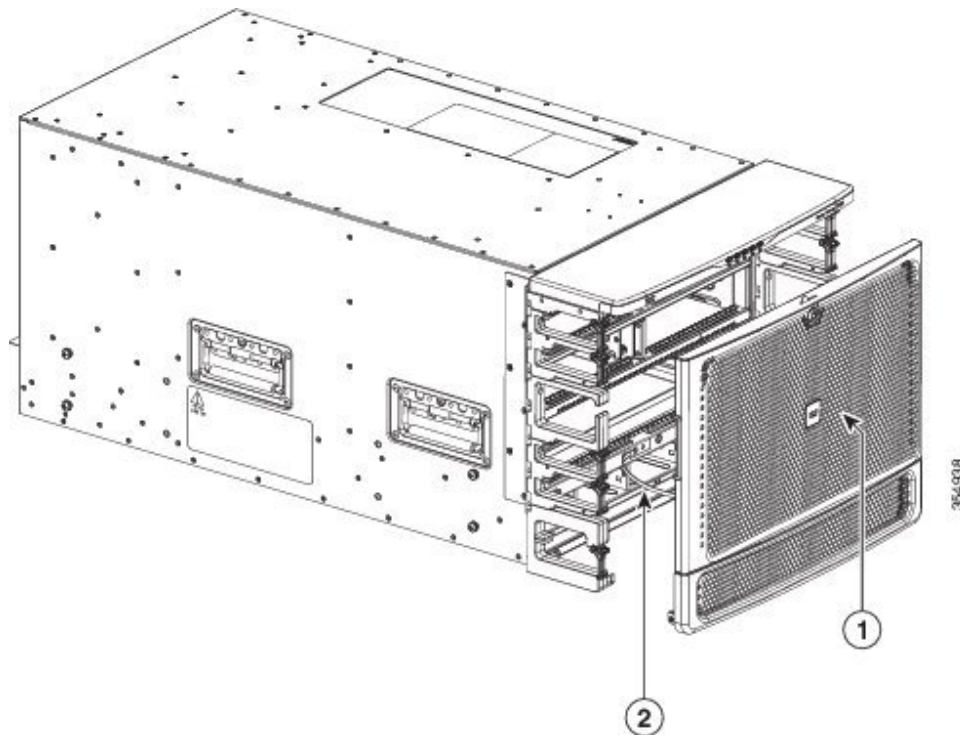


1	Grounding cable	2	Grounding cable
---	-----------------	---	-----------------

Step 5 Apply the star ring terminal end of the grounding cable to the front ID door.

Step 6 Connect the other round terminal of the grounding cable to the ground port on the chassis as shown in Figure 12. Tighten the M4 screw to 9 to 12 in-lb (1.01 to 1.35 N-m) of torque.

Figure 16: Connecting the Grounding Cable to the Ground Port on the Cisco Nexus 7706 Chassis



1	Front ID Door	2	Grounding Cable connected to Ground port on the chassis
---	---------------	---	---

Note Use the ground port in the back of the Cisco Nexus 7706 chassis for primary earthing when you use the front ground port for grounding the removable door.

Installing Cable Management Frames onto the Chassis

Before you begin

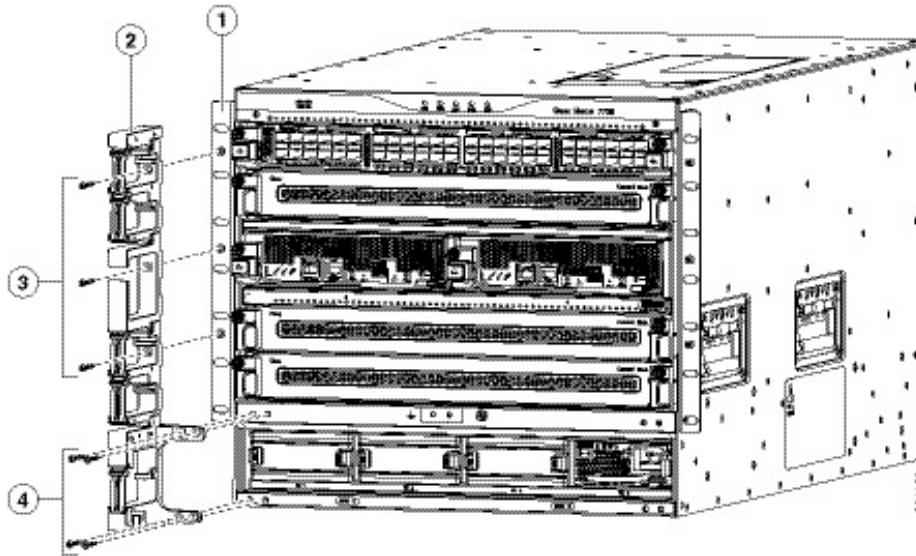
- The chassis must be installed and secured to the rack.
- You must have the following tools and equipment:
 - Manual Phillips screwdriver with torque capability (customer supplied).
- The following frames and screws (shipped with the switch):
 - Two cable management side frames
 - One cable management top hood frame
 - 22 M4 x 12-mm, flat-head, Phillips screws

Step 1

Attach the two cable management frames to the chassis as follows:

- a) Position one of the cable management side frame assemblies on the vertical mounting bracket attached to one side of the front of the chassis so that the following screw holes align:
 - Five screw holes in the assembly should align with the screw holes in five studs on the mounting bracket (see the following figure).

Figure 17: Attaching a Cable Management Assembly to the Chassis



1	Vertical mounting bracket on the chassis	3	M4 x 12 mm screws (three) secure the upper portion of assembly to the mounting bracket
2	Cable management assembly	4	M4 x 12 mm screws (four) secure two angle brackets to the chassis

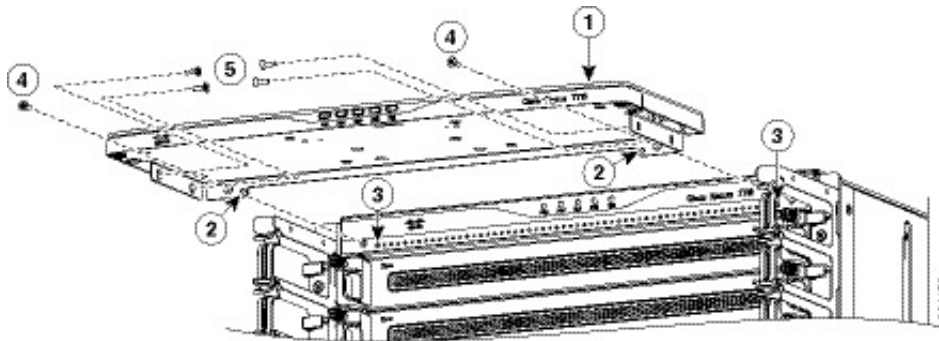
- Four screw holes in the two angled brackets on the assembly should align with the four screw holes in the chassis. If these screw holes do not align together or the angled brackets do not touch the chassis, try positioning the assembly on the opposite side of the chassis.
- b) Secure the upper portion of the frame to the chassis vertical mounting bracket with three M4 x 12 mm, flat-head, Phillips screws. Tighten each screw to 11.5 to 15 in-lb (1.3 to 1.7 N·m) of torque.
 - c) Secure the bottom portion of the frame to the chassis using four M4 x 12 MM flat-head Phillips screws in the two angled brackets on the frame. Tighten each screw to 11.5 to 15 in-lb (1.3 to 1.7 N·m) of torque.
 - d) Repeat Steps 1a through 1c to attach the other cable management frame to the mounting bracket on the opposite side of the chassis.

Step 2

Attach the cable management top hood to the chassis and the tops of the two cable management side assemblies as follows:

- a) Place the top hood (see Callout 1 in the following figure), with its brackets pointing down, on top of the two cable management side assemblies.

Figure 18: Attaching the Top Hood to the Chassis and Cable Management Assemblies



1	Top hood cable management frame	4	M4 x 13 mm screws (two) secure the top hood to the chassis
2	Alignment pins on the back side of the top hood frame	5	Four M4 x 13 mm screws (two per side) secure the top hood to each upper cable management frame
3	Alignment holes in the chassis		

- b) Verify that two alignment pins on the back side of the hood (see Callout 2 in the previous figure) align with the two holes (see Callout 3 in the previous figure) in the front of the chassis. If they align, slide the hood to the front of the chassis.

The screw hole next to each alignment pin should align with a screw hole on the chassis, and two screw holes on each of two sides of the hood should align with two screw holes on the top of a cable management assembly.

- c) Secure the top hood to the chassis using two M4 x 12 mm flat-head Phillips screws (see Callout 4 in the previous figure). Tighten each screw to 11.5 to 15 in-lb (1.3 to 1.7 N·m) of torque.
- d) Secure the top hood to the two side assemblies by using four M4 x 12 mm flat-head Phillips screws (use two screws for each assembly) (see Callout 5 in the previous figure). Tighten each screw to 11.5 to 15 in-lb (1.3 to 1.7 N·m) of torque.

What to do next

You are ready to attach the optional door to the cable management frames.

Attaching the Front Door to the Chassis

Before you can attach the optional front door to the chassis, you must attach a door-stop bracket to the bottom of the cable management top hood.

Optionally, you can install an air filter inside the door and brush filters to the sides of the door and to the sides of the cable management assemblies (see [Installing Cable Management Frames onto the Chassis](#), on page 36).

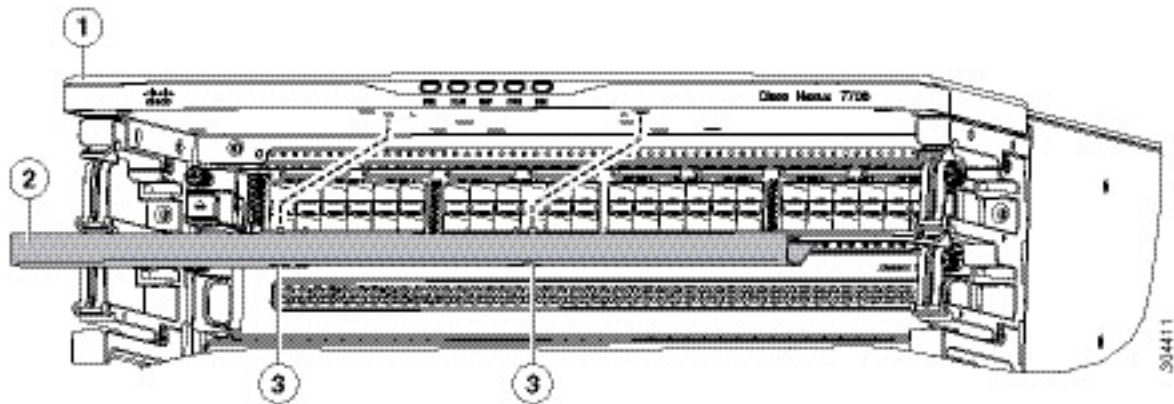
Before you begin

- Verify that the cable management frames are attached to the chassis.
- Verify that you have the following tools and equipment:
 - Optional front door kit
 - Door stop bracket
 - Front door
 - Number 1 manual Phillips torque screwdriver

Step 1 Attach the metal door-stop bracket to the top hood as follows:

- a) Place the metal door bracket under the top hood of the cable management system and align with the two screws on the metal bracket with two holes on the bottom of the top hood (see the following figure).

Figure 19: Attaching the Door Stop



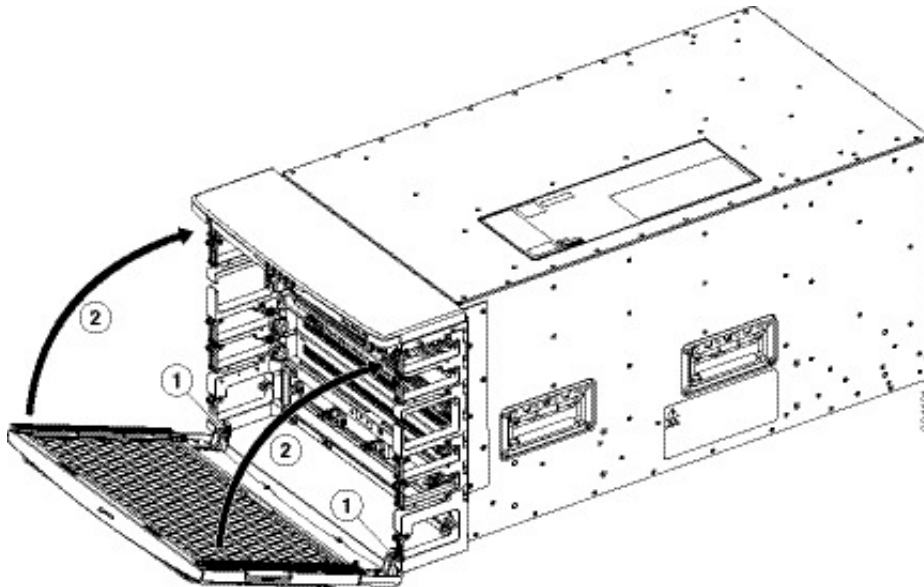
1	Top hood	3	Align the bracket screws to two screw holes in the top hood
2	Door stop bracket		

- b) Secure the bracket to the hood by screwing in two captive screws on the bracket to the hood and tighten to each screw to 8 in-lb (0.9 N·m) of torque.

Step 2 Attach the front door as follows:

- a) Place the two rollers at the bottom of the front door on the two holders at the bottom of the right and left cable management frames (see Callout 1 in the following figure).

Figure 20: Placing the Door on the Cable Management Frames



1	Place the two rollers on the bottom of the door on the holders (one holder at the bottom of each cable management side frame).	2	Rotate the top of the door to the top hood until the door is held in place magnetically.
---	--	---	--

- b) With the door resting on the holders, rotate the top of the door to the metal door-stop bracket installed at the bottom of the top hood.

Magnets on the top of the door hold the door shut. If you need to lock the door in place, use the key that comes with the door.

Installing Air Filters

You can attach the optional air filters to the inside of the front door, the sides of the front door, and the cable management side frames.



Note We recommend that you change the air filter every 3 months. However, examine the air filter once a month (or more often in dusty environments) and replace it if it appears to be excessively dirty or damaged. To comply with Telecordia GR-63-Core standard air filter requirements for NEBS deployments, the air filter must be replaced, not cleaned.

Before you begin

- Verify that the cable management frames are installed on the chassis.
- Verify that the optional front door is installed or available for installation.

- Verify that you have the following tools or equipment:
 - Optional air filter kit is available for installation.
 - Divider bracket
 - M3 x 8 mm screws (2)
 - Door filter
 - Narrow brush filters (2)
 - Cable management frame air filters (2)
 - M4 x 12 mm screws (4)
 - Manual Phillips torque screwdriver

Step 1

Attach the divider bracket to the left and right cable management side assemblies as follows:

- a) Position the divider bracket between the right and left cable management assemblies between the bottom I/O module and the power supplies. The back edge of the divider bracket has two curved corners that should come in contact with the chassis.
- b) Align the two slots on both sides of the bracket with the pins that stick out from the upper portion of the lower cable management frame (power-supply cable management frame) and lower the bracket past the pins until the bracket stops.
- c) Push the bracket about 0.5 inches (1 cm) to the front of the chassis until it stops.

A screw hole on each side of the divider bracket aligns with a screw hole in each cable management side assembly.
- d) Secure the divider bracket to both cable management side assemblies using two M3 x 8 mm screws (one screw for each of two sides) and tightening the screws to 5 to 7 in-lb (0.56 to 0.79 N.m) of torque.

Step 2

Insert the door filter inside the back side of the door as follows:

- a) Open the front door and pull it off of the chassis.
- b) Place the front of the door on a table top so that the back (open) side is facing up.
- c) Remove the largest air filter from its packaging, hold the side with the hexagonal shaped holes facing up, and insert the filter into the open back side of the door.

If necessary, push in the spring clips on the side of the filter to push the filter into the door. The filter snaps into place on the door.

Step 3

Attach the two narrow brush filters to the sides of the door as follows:

- a) Remove a long slender door-side filter from its packaging and align its two holes with two pins in the door.
- b) Slide the filter down the door until it stops on the pins. Screw in the two captive screws on the filter to the door and tighten to 8 in-lb (0.9 N·m).
- c) Repeat Steps 2a and 2b to attach the other door-side filter to the door.

Step 4

Attach the two air filters to the cable management frames as follows:

- a) Remove a cable management air filter from its packaging and position it on the upper portion of one of the two cable management side frames so that its six holes align with six screw holes in the cable management frame.
 - b) Fasten the air filter to the cable-management assembly with the two M4 x 12 mm screws on top and four M3 x 12 mm screws below. Tighten the M4 screws to 11.5 to 15 in-lbs (1.3 to 1.7 N·m) of torque, and tighten the M3 screws to 5 to 7 in-lb (0.56 to 0.79 N.m) of torque.
 - c) Repeat Steps 3a and 3b to attach the other air filter to the cable management assembly on the other side of the chassis.
-



CHAPTER 4

Connecting to the Network

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Guidelines for Connecting Ports, on page 43](#)
- [Connecting a Console to the Switch, on page 44](#)
- [Connecting the Management Interface, on page 45](#)
- [Creating the Initial Switch Configuration, on page 46](#)
- [Connecting Interface Ports to the Network, on page 47](#)

Guidelines for Connecting Ports

You can use CPAK, Quad Small Form-Factor Pluggable Plus (QSFP+), Small Form-Factor Pluggable Plus (SFP+), and Small Form-Factor Pluggable (SFP) transceivers to connect the ports on the I/O modules to other network devices, which can include other switches or Fabric Extenders (FEXs). The SFP+ transceivers include Fabric Extender Transceivers (FETs) for connecting I/O modules with FEXs.

The transceivers used with copper cables come already assembled with their cables. The transceivers used with fiber-optic cables come separated from their cables. To prevent damage to the fiber-optic cables and their transceivers, we recommend that you keep the transceivers disconnected from their fiber-optic cables when installing the transceiver in the I/O module. Before removing a transceiver for a fiber-optic cable, remove the cable from the transceiver.

To maximize the effectiveness and life of your transceivers and optical cables, do the following:

- Wear an ESD-preventative wrist strap that is connected to an earth ground whenever handling transceivers. The switch is typically grounded during installation and provides an ESD port to which you can connect your wrist strap.
- Do not remove and insert a transceiver more often than is necessary. Repeated removals and insertions can shorten its useful life.
- Keep the transceivers and fiber-optic cables clean and dust free to maintain high signal accuracy and to prevent damage to the connectors. Attenuation (loss of light) is increased by contamination and should be kept below 0.35 dB.
 - Clean these parts before installation to prevent dust from scratching the fiber-optic cable ends.
 - Clean the connectors regularly; the required frequency of cleaning depends upon the environment. In addition, clean connectors if they are exposed to dust or accidentally touched. Both wet and dry cleaning techniques can be effective; refer to your site's fiber-optic connection cleaning procedures.

- Do not touch the ends of connectors. Touching the ends can leave fingerprints and cause other contamination.
- Inspect routinely for dust and damage. If you suspect damage, clean and then inspect fiber ends under a microscope to determine if damage has occurred.

Connecting a Console to the Switch

Before you create a network management connection for the switch or connect the switch to the network, you must create a local management connection through a console terminal and configure an IP address for the switch. You can also use the console to perform the following functions, each of which can be performed through the management interface after you make that connection later on:

- Configure the switch using the command-line interface (CLI).
- Monitor network statistics and errors.
- Configure Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) agent parameters.
- Download software updates.

You make this local management connection between the asynchronous serial port on a supervisor module and a console device capable of asynchronous transmission. Typically, you can use a computer terminal as the console device. On the supervisor modules, you use one of the following asynchronous serial ports:

- CONSOLE SERIAL PORT

This port is used for direct connections to the console.



Note Before you can connect the console port to a computer terminal, make sure that the computer terminal supports VT100 terminal emulation. The terminal emulation software makes communication between the switch and computer possible during setup and configuration.

Before you begin

- The switch must be fully installed in its rack, connected to a power source, and grounded.
- The necessary cabling for the console, management, and network connections must be available.
 - An RJ-45 rollover cable and DB9F/RJ-45 adapter are provided in the switch accessory kit.
 - Network cabling should already be routed to the location of the installed switch.

Step 1 Configure the console device to match the following default port characteristics:

- 9600 baud
- 8 data bits
- 1 stop bit

- No parity

Step 2 Route the RJ-45 rollover cable through the center slot in the cable management system and then to the console or modem.

Step 3 Connect the other end of the RJ-45 rollover cable to the console or to a modem.

If the console or modem cannot use an RJ-45 connection, use the DB-9F/RJ-45F PC terminal adapter found in the accessory kit for the switch. Alternatively, you can use an RJ-45/DSUB F/F or RJ-45/DSUB R/P adapter, but you must provide those adapters.

What to do next

You are ready to create the initial switch configuration (see [Creating the Initial Switch Configuration, on page 46](#)).

Connecting the Management Interface

The supervisor management port (MGMT ETH) provides out-of-band management, which enables you to use the command-line interface (CLI) or the Cisco Data Center Network Manager (DCNM) interface to manage the switch by its IP address. This port uses a 10/100/1000 Ethernet connection with an RJ-45 interface.



Note In a dual supervisor switch, you can ensure that the active supervisor module is always connected to the network by connecting the management interface on both supervisor modules to the network (that is, you can perform this task for each supervisor module). That way, no matter which supervisor module is active, the switch automatically has a management interface that is running and accessible from the network.



Caution To prevent an IP address conflict, do not connect the MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet port until the initial configuration is complete. For more information, see [Creating the Initial Switch Configuration, on page 46](#).

Before you begin

You must have completed the initial switch configuration (see [Creating the Initial Switch Configuration, on page 46](#)).

Step 1 Connect a modular, RJ-45, UTP cable to the MGMT ETH port on the supervisor module.

Step 2 Route the cable through the central slot in the cable management system.

Step 3 Connect the other end of the cable to a 10/100/1000 Ethernet port on a network device.

What to do next

You are ready to connect the interface ports on each of the I/O modules to the network.

Creating the Initial Switch Configuration

You must assign an IP address to the switch management interface so that you can then connect the switch to the network.

When you initially power up the switch, it boots up and asks you a series of questions to configure the switch. To enable you to connect the switch to the network, you can use the default choices for each configuration except the IP address, which you must provide. You can perform the other configurations at a later time as described in the *Cisco Nexus 7000 Series NX-OS Fundamentals Configuration Guide*.



Note You should also know the unique name needed to identify the switch among the devices in the network.

Before you begin

- A console device must be connected with the switch.
- The switch must be connected to a power source.
- Determine the IP address and netmask needed for the following interfaces:
 - Management (Mgmt0) interface

Step 1 Power up the switch by turning the power switch from standby () to on () with each power supply installed in the switch chassis.

The Input and Output LEDs on each power supply light up (green) when the power supply units are sending power to the switch, and the software asks you to specify a password to use with the switch.

Step 2 Enter a new password to use for this switch.

The software checks the security strength of your password and rejects your password if it is not considered to be a strong password. To increase the security strength of your password, make sure that it adheres to the following guidelines:

- At least eight characters
- Minimizes or avoids the use of consecutive characters (such as "abcd")
- Minimizes or avoids repeating characters (such as "aaabbb")
- Does not contain recognizable words from the dictionary
- Does not contain proper names
- Contains both uppercase and lowercase characters
- Contains numbers as well as letters

Examples of strong passwords include the following:

- If2CoM18
- 2004AsdfLkj30

- Cb1955S21

Note Clear text passwords cannot include the dollar sign (\$) special character.

Tip If a password is trivial (such as a short, easy-to-decipher password), the software will reject your password configuration. Be sure to configure a strong password as explained in this step. Passwords are case sensitive.

If you enter a strong password, the software asks you to confirm the password.

Step 3 Enter the same password again.

If you enter the same password, the software accepts the password and begins asking a series of configuration questions.

Step 4 Until you are asked for an IP address, you can enter the default configuration for each question.

Repeat this step for each question until you are asked for the Mgmt0 IPv4 address.

Step 5 Enter the IP address for the management interface.

The software asks for the Mgmt0 IPv4 netmask.

Step 6 Enter a network mask for the management interface.

The software asks if you need to edit the configuration.

Step 7 Enter **no** to not edit the configuration.

The software asks if you need to save the configuration.

Step 8 Enter **yes** to save the configuration.

What to do next

You can now set up the management interface for each supervisor module on the switch.

Connecting Interface Ports to the Network

You can connect optical interface ports on I/O modules with other devices for network connectivity.

Connecting a Fiber-Optic Cable to a Transceiver

To prevent damage to the fiber-optic cables, do not place more tension on them than the rated limit and do not bend them to a radius less than 1 inch (2.54 cm) if there is no tension in the cable or 2 inches (5.08 cm) if there is tension in the cable.

To prevent possible damage to the cable or transceiver, install the transceiver in the port before installing the cable in the transceiver.

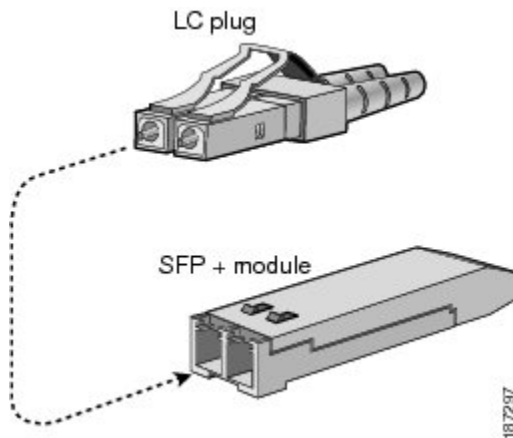
Step 1 Attach an ESD-preventative wrist strap and follow its instructions for use.

Step 2 Remove the dust cover from the port connector on the cable.

Step 3 Remove the dust cover from the cable end of the transceiver.

Step 4 Align the cable connector with the transceiver and insert the connector into the transceiver until it clicks into place (see the following figure for SFP or SFP+ transceivers).

Figure 21: Connecting an LC Optical Cable Plug to a Transceiver



If the cable does not install easily, ensure that it is correctly oriented before continuing.

Disconnecting Optical Ports from the Network

When removing fiber-optic transceivers, you must remove the fiber-optic cables from a transceiver before removing the transceiver from the port.

Maintaining Transceivers and Optical Cables

Transceivers and fiber-optic cables must be kept clean and dust free to maintain high signal accuracy and prevent damage to the connectors. Attenuation (loss of light) is increased by contamination and should be below 0.35 dB.

Consider the following maintenance guidelines:

- Transceivers are static sensitive. To prevent ESD damage, wear an ESD-preventative wrist strap that is connected to the grounded chassis.
- Do not remove and insert a transceiver more often than is necessary. Repeated removals and insertions can shorten its useful life.
- Keep all optical connections covered when not in use. Clean them before using to prevent dust from scratching the fiber-optic cable ends.
- Do not touch the ends of connectors. Touching the ends can leave fingerprints and cause other contamination.
- Clean the connectors regularly; the required frequency of cleaning depends upon the environment. In addition, clean connectors if they are exposed to dust or accidentally touched. Both wet and dry cleaning techniques can be effective; refer to your site's fiber-optic connection cleaning procedures.

- Inspect routinely for dust and damage. If you suspect damage, clean and then inspect fiber ends under a microscope to determine if damage has occurred.



CHAPTER 5

Managing the Switch

- [Displaying Information About Installed Hardware Modules, on page 51](#)
- [Displaying the Hardware Inventory for a Switch, on page 54](#)
- [Displaying the Backplane and Serial Number Information, on page 55](#)
- [Displaying Environmental Information for a Switch, on page 57](#)
- [Displaying Temperatures for Modules, on page 60](#)
- [Connecting to a Module, on page 62](#)
- [Saving the Module Configuration, on page 63](#)
- [Displaying Power Usage Information, on page 63](#)
- [Reloading a Module, on page 64](#)
- [Rebooting the Switch, on page 64](#)
- [Overview of Supervisor Modules, on page 65](#)
- [Overview of I/O Module Support, on page 65](#)
- [Overview of Fabric Module Support, on page 71](#)
- [Power Modes Overview, on page 73](#)
- [Overview of Fan Trays, on page 77](#)

Displaying Information About Installed Hardware Modules

To display information about the switch hardware and the hardware modules installed in the switch chassis, use the **show hardware** command.

Enter the **show hardware** command.

Example:

```
switch# show hardware
Cisco Nexus Operating System (NX-OS) Software
TAC support: http://www.cisco.com/tac
Documents: http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps9372/tsd_products_support_series_home.html
Copyright (c) 2002-2013, Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
The copyrights to certain works contained in this software are
owned by other third parties and used and distributed under
license. Certain components of this software are licensed under
the GNU General Public License (GPL) version 2.0 or the GNU
Lesser General Public License (LGPL) Version 2.1. A copy of each
such license is available at
```

<http://www.opensource.org/licenses/gpl-2.0.php> and
<http://www.opensource.org/licenses/lgpl-2.1.php>

Software

```

BIOS:          version 1.7.0
kickstart:    8.3(0)SK(1) [build 8.3(0)SK(0.47)] [gdb]
system:       8.3(0)SK(1) [build 8.3(0)SK(0.47)] [gdb]
BIOS compile time:    10/10/2017
kickstart image file is: bootflash:///n7700-s3-kickstart.8.3.0.SK.0.47.gbin
kickstart compile time: 5/31/2018 23:00:00 [03/02/2018 06:26:13]
system image file is:   bootflash:///n7700-s3-dk9.8.3.0.SK.0.47.gbi
system compile time:   5/31/2018 23:00:00 [03/02/2018 08:23:10]

```

Hardware

```

cisco Nexus7000 C... (... Slot) Chassis ("Supervisor module-3")
Intel(R) Xeon(R) CPU D-1548 with 65617088 kB of memory.
Processor Board ID JAE2150086E

```

```

Device name: N7...
bootflash:    3932160 kB
slot0:        0 kB (expansion flash)

```

Kernel uptime is 2 day(s), 7 hour(s), 31 minute(s), 20 second(s)

```

Last reset at 419340 usecs after Mon Mar  6 08:38:30 2017
Reason: Reset Requested by CLI command reload
System version: 8.3(0)SK(0.47)
Service:

```

plugin

```

Core Plugin, Ethernet Plugin
-----

```

Switch hardware ID information

```

-----
Switch is booted up
Switch type is : Nexus7700 C... (... Slot) Chassis
Model number is N77-C7...
H/W version is 0.2
Part Number is 73-15311-01
Part Revision is 04
Manufacture Date is Year 17 Week 21
Serial number is JAF1721ADPE
CLEI code is

```

```

-----
Chassis has ... Module slots and ... Fabric slots
-----

```

```

Module1 empty

```

```

Module2 ok
Module type is : 100 Gbps Ethernet Module
0 submodules are present
Model number is N77-F430CQ-36
H/W version is 0.203
Part Number is 73-101350-02
Part Revision is 05
Manufacture Date is Year 21 Week 43
Serial number is JAE214303LY
CLEI code is

```

```

Module3 ok

```



```

Module type is : Supervisor module-3
0 submodules are present
Model number is N77-SUP3E
H/W version is 0.909
Part Number is 73-16310-09
Part Revision is 09
Manufacture Date is Year 21 Week 50
Serial number is JAE2150086E
CLEI code is

Module4 ok
Module type is : 10/40 Gbps Ethernet Module
0 submodules are present
Model number is N77-M324FQ-25L
H/W version is 0.4
Part Number is 73-17257-05
Part Revision is 08
Manufacture Date is Year 19 Week 48
Serial number is JAE194804JX
CLEI code is
.
.
.
Xbar1 ok
Module type is : Fabric card module
0 submodules are present
Model number is N77-C7706-FAB-3
H/W version is 0.705
Part Number is 73-16031-07
Part Revision is 05
Manufacture Date is Year 21 Week 36
Serial number is JAE213604M9
CLEI code is
.
.
.
-----
Chassis has ... PowerSupply Slots
-----

PS1 ok
Power supply type is: 3000.00W 220v AC
Model number is N77-AC-3KW
H/W version is 1.0
Part Number is 341-0600-01
Part Revision is B0
Manufacture Date is Year 17 Week 17
Serial number is DTM171700CR
CLEI code is CMUPABRCAA

PS2 absent

PS3 absent

PS4 absent

-----
Chassis has ... Fan slots
-----

Fan1(sys_fan1) ok
Model number is N77-C7...-FAN-2
H/W version is 0.100
Part Number is 73-101408-01

```

```

Part Revision is 01
Manufacture Date is Year 20 Week 51
Serial number is NCV2051T036
CLEI code is

```

Displaying the Hardware Inventory for a Switch

To display information about the field replaceable units (FRUs), including product IDs, serial numbers, and version IDs, use the **show inventory** command.

Enter the **show inventory** command.

Example:

```

switch# show inventory
NAME: "Chassis",  DESCR: "Nexus7700 C7706 (6 Slot) Chassis "
PID: N77-C7706      ,  VID: V00 ,  SN: JAF1721ADPE

NAME: "Slot 1",  DESCR: "100 Gbps Ethernet Module"
PID: N77-F430CQ-36 ,  VID: V00 ,  SN: JAE214303LW

NAME: "Slot 2",  DESCR: "100 Gbps Ethernet Module"
PID: N77-F430CQ-36 ,  VID: V00 ,  SN: JAE214303LY

NAME: "Slot 3",  DESCR: "Supervisor Module-3"
PID: N77-SUP3E    ,  VID: V00 ,  SN: JAE2150086E

NAME: "Slot 5",  DESCR: "100 Gbps Ethernet Module"
PID: N77-F430CQ-36 ,  VID: V00 ,  SN: JAE214303MP

NAME: "Slot 6",  DESCR: "100 Gbps Ethernet Module"
PID: N77-F430CQ-36 ,  VID: V00 ,  SN: JAE214303N8

NAME: "Slot 7",  DESCR: "Fabric card module"
PID: N77-C7706-FAB-3 ,  VID: V00 ,  SN: JAE213604M9

NAME: "Slot 8",  DESCR: "Fabric card module"
PID: N77-C7706-FAB-3 ,  VID: V00 ,  SN: JAE212106WA

NAME: "Slot 9",  DESCR: "Fabric card module"
PID: N77-C7706-FAB-3 ,  VID: V00 ,  SN: JAE212106VM

NAME: "Slot 10", DESCR: "Fabric card module"
PID: N77-C7706-FAB-3 ,  VID: V00 ,  SN: JAE212106W6

NAME: "Slot 11", DESCR: "Fabric card module"
PID: N77-C7706-FAB-3 ,  VID: V00 ,  SN: JAE212106WX

NAME: "Slot 12", DESCR: "Fabric card module"
PID: N77-C7706-FAB-3 ,  VID: V00 ,  SN: JAE212106X3

NAME: "Slot 33", DESCR: "Nexus7700 C7706 (6 Slot) Chassis Power Supply"
PID: N77-AC-3KW    ,  VID: V01 ,  SN: DTM1719010D

NAME: "Slot 34", DESCR: "Nexus7700 C7706 (6 Slot) Chassis Power Supply"
PID: N77-AC-3KW    ,  VID: V03 ,  SN: ART201970EG

```

```
NAME: "Slot 35", DESCR: "Nexus7700 C7706 (6 Slot) Chassis Power Supply"
PID: N7K-AC-3KW      , VID: V00 , SN: DTM162703N9

NAME: "Slot 36", DESCR: "Nexus7700 C7706 (6 Slot) Chassis Power Supply"
PID: N77-AC-3KW      , VID: V01 , SN: DTM192301YP

NAME: "Slot 37", DESCR: "Nexus7700 C7706 (6 Slot) Chassis Fan Module"
PID: N77-C7706-FAN-2 , VID: V01 , SN: NCV2108V01Y

NAME: "Slot 38", DESCR: "Nexus7700 C7706 (6 Slot) Chassis Fan Module"
PID: N77-C7706-FAN-2 , VID: V01 , SN: NCV2108V02D

NAME: "Slot 39", DESCR: "Nexus7700 C7706 (6 Slot) Chassis Fan Module"
PID: N77-C7706-FAN-2 , VID: V01 , SN: NCV2108V026
```

Displaying the Backplane and Serial Number Information

You can display the backplane information, including the serial number for the switch, by using the **show sprom backplane** command.

Enter the **show sprom backplane** command.

Example:

```
switch# show sprom backplane 1
DISPLAY backplane sprom contents:
Common block:
Block Signature : 0xabab
Block Version   : 3
Block Length    : 160
Block Checksum  : 0x1360
EEPROM Size     : 65535
Block Count     : 5
FRU Major Type  : 0x6001
FRU Minor Type  : 0x0
OEM String      : Cisco Systems, Inc.
Product Number  : N77-C7706
Serial Number   : JAF1726ALCL
Part Number     : 73-15311-01
Part Revision   : 06
Mfg Deviation   :
H/W Version     : 0.2
Mfg Bits        : 0
Engineer Use    : 0
snmpOID        : 9.12.3.1.3.1354.0.0
Power Consump   : 0
RMA Code        : 0-0-0-0
CLEI Code       :
VID             : V00
Chassis specific block:
Block Signature : 0x6001
Block Version   : 3
Block Length    : 39
Block Checksum  : 0x52e
Feature Bits    : 0x0
```

Displaying the Backplane and Serial Number Information

```

HW Changes Bits : 0x0
Stackmib OID   : 0
MAC Addresses  : 54-7f-ee-eb-e9-80
Number of MACs : 128
OEM Enterprise : 9
OEM MIB Offset : 5
MAX Connector Power: 0
WNN software-module specific block:
Block Signature : 0x6005
Block Version   : 1
Block Length    : 0
Block Checksum  : 0x66
wnn usage bits:
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
License software-module specific block:
Block Signature : 0x6006
Block Version   : 1
Block Length    : 16
Block Checksum  : 0x17f
lic usage bits:
c8 40 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
Second Serial number specific block:
Block Signature : 0x6007
Block Version   : 1
Block Length    : 28
Block Checksum  : 0x339
Serial Number   : JAF1724ALDE
switch#

```

Displaying Environmental Information for a Switch

You can display all of the environment-related switch information by using the **show environment** command.

Enter the **show environment** command.

Example:

```
switch# show environment
```

```
Power Supply:
```

```
Voltage: 50 Volts
```

Power Supply	Model	Actual Output (Watts)	Total Capacity (Watts)	Status
1	N77-AC-3KW	538 W	3000 W	Ok
2	N77-AC-3KW	543 W	3000 W	Ok
3	N77-AC-3KW	539 W	3000 W	Ok

Module	Model	Actual Draw (Watts)	Power Allocated (Watts)	Status
1	N77-M348XP-23L	429 W	560 W	Powered-Up
2	N77-M348XP-23L	426 W	560 W	Powered-Up
3	N77-SUP3E	100 W	190 W	Powered-Up
4	supervisor	N/A	0 W	Absent
5	N77-F430CQ-36	603 W	1000 W	Powered-Up
6	N77-M348XP-23L	428 W	560 W	Powered-Up
Xb1	N77-C7706-FAB-3	58 W	85 W	Powered-Up
Xb2	N77-C7706-FAB-3	60 W	85 W	Powered-Up
Xb3	N77-C7706-FAB-3	59 W	85 W	Powered-Up
Xb4	N77-C7706-FAB-3	61 W	85 W	Powered-Up
Xb5	N77-C7706-FAB-3	61 W	85 W	Powered-Up
fan1	N77-C77xx-FAN	37 W	900 W	Powered-Up
fan2	N77-C77xx-FAN	37 W	900 W	Powered-Up
fan3	N77-C77xx-FAN	37 W	900 W	Powered-Up

N/A - Per module power not available

```
Power Usage Summary:
```

Power Supply redundancy mode (configured)	PS-Redundant
Power Supply redundancy mode (operational)	PS-Redundant
Total Power Capacity (based on configured mode)	45000 W
Total Power of all Inputs (cumulative)	48000 W
Total Power Output (actual draw)	8658 W
Total Power Allocated (budget)	13990 W
Total Power Available for additional modules	31010 W

```
Clock:
```

Clock	Model	Hw	Status
A	Clock Module	--	NotSupported/None
B	Clock Module	--	NotSupported/None

```
Fan:
```

Fan	Model	Hw	Status
Fan1 (sys_fan1)	N77-C77xx-FAN	1.1	Ok
Fan2 (sys_fan2)	N77-C77xx-FAN	1.1	Ok

Displaying Environmental Information for a Switch

```

Fan3(fab_fan3)  N77-C77xx-FAN      1.1      Ok
Fan_in_PS1     --                --        Ok
Fan_in_PS2     --                --        Ok
Fan_in_PS3     --                --        Ok
Fan_Zone Speed: Zone 1: 0x57

```

Temperature:

```

-----
Module   Sensor                MajorThresh  MinorThres  CurTemp  Status
        (Celsius)           (Celsius)   (Celsius)
-----
1       Crossbar1 (s1)        125          115         48       Ok
1       Crossbar2 (s2)        125          115         61       Ok
1       Arb-muxSn0 (s3)      125          105         56       Ok
1       Arb-muxSn1 (s4)      125          105         58       Ok
1       CPU (s5)             125          105         54       Ok
1       CPU (s6)             125          105         54       Ok
1       PCISW (s7)          110          100         46       Ok
1       L2L3Dev1Sn1 (s8)    125          115         60       Ok
1       L2L3Dev1Sn2 (s9)    125          115         66       Ok
1       L3Lkup1Sn1 (s10)    125          105         59       Ok
1       L3Lkup1Sn2 (s11)    125          105         61       Ok
1       L2L3Dev2Sn1 (s12)   125          115         59       Ok
1       L2L3Dev2Sn2 (s13)   125          115         68       Ok
1       L3Lkup2Sn1 (s14)    125          105         54       Ok
1       L3Lkup2Sn2 (s15)    125          105         54       Ok
2       Crossbar1 (s1)        125          115         49       Ok
2       Crossbar2 (s2)        125          115         64       Ok
2       Arb-muxSn0 (s3)      125          105         59       Ok
2       Arb-muxSn1 (s4)      125          105         61       Ok
2       CPU (s5)             125          105         52       Ok
2       CPU (s6)             125          105         52       Ok
2       PCISW (s7)          110          100         50       Ok
2       L2L3Dev1Sn1 (s8)    125          115         63       Ok
2       L2L3Dev1Sn2 (s9)    125          115         68       Ok
2       L3Lkup1Sn1 (s10)    125          105         56       Ok
2       L3Lkup1Sn2 (s11)    125          105         59       Ok
2       L2L3Dev2Sn1 (s12)   125          115         60       Ok
2       L2L3Dev2Sn2 (s13)   125          115         67       Ok
2       L3Lkup2Sn1 (s14)    125          105         56       Ok
2       L3Lkup2Sn2 (s15)    125          105         59       Ok
3       Crossbar1 (s1)        125          115         47       Ok
3       Crossbar2 (s2)        125          115         63       Ok
3       Arb-muxSn0 (s3)      125          105         57       Ok
3       Arb-muxSn1 (s4)      125          105         60       Ok
3       CPU (s5)             125          105         53       Ok
3       CPU (s6)             125          105         53       Ok
3       PCISW (s7)          110          100         51       Ok
3       L2L3Dev1Sn1 (s8)    125          115         60       Ok
3       L2L3Dev1Sn2 (s9)    125          115         67       Ok
3       L3Lkup1Sn1 (s10)    125          105         58       Ok
3       L3Lkup1Sn2 (s11)    125          105         58       Ok
3       L2L3Dev2Sn1 (s12)   125          115         59       Ok
3       L2L3Dev2Sn2 (s13)   125          115         67       Ok
3       L3Lkup2Sn1 (s14)    125          105         55       Ok
3       L3Lkup2Sn2 (s15)    125          105         55       Ok
4       Crossbar1 (s1)        125          115         57       Ok
4       Crossbar2 (s2)        125          115         63       Ok
4       Arb-muxSn0 (s3)      125          105         58       Ok
4       Arb-muxSn1 (s4)      125          105         60       Ok
4       CPU (s5)             125          105         53       Ok
4       CPU (s6)             125          105         53       Ok
4       PCISW (s7)          110          100         53       Ok
4       L2L3Dev1Sn1 (s8)    125          115         61       Ok

```

4	L2L3Dev1Sn2 (s9)	125	115	68	Ok
4	L3Lkup1Sn1 (s10)	125	105	55	Ok
4	L3Lkup1Sn2 (s11)	125	105	55	Ok
4	L2L3Dev2Sn1 (s12)	125	115	59	Ok
4	L2L3Dev2Sn2 (s13)	125	115	66	Ok
4	L3Lkup2Sn1 (s14)	125	105	55	Ok
4	L3Lkup2Sn2 (s15)	125	105	56	Ok
5	Crossbar1 (s1)	125	115	47	Ok
5	Crossbar2 (s2)	125	115	63	Ok
5	Arb-muxSn0 (s3)	125	105	56	Ok
5	Arb-muxSn1 (s4)	125	105	58	Ok
5	CPU (s5)	125	105	52	Ok
5	CPU (s6)	125	105	52	Ok
5	PCISW (s7)	110	100	46	Ok
5	L2L3Dev1Sn1 (s8)	125	115	59	Ok
5	L2L3Dev1Sn2 (s9)	125	115	64	Ok
5	L3Lkup1Sn1 (s10)	125	105	56	Ok
5	L3Lkup1Sn2 (s11)	125	105	56	Ok
5	L2L3Dev2Sn1 (s12)	125	115	59	Ok
5	L2L3Dev2Sn2 (s13)	125	115	67	Ok
5	L3Lkup2Sn1 (s14)	125	105	55	Ok
5	L3Lkup2Sn2 (s15)	125	105	56	Ok
6	Crossbar1 (s1)	125	115	48	Ok
6	Crossbar2 (s2)	125	115	63	Ok
6	Arb-muxSn0 (s3)	125	105	57	Ok
6	Arb-muxSn1 (s4)	125	105	59	Ok
6	CPU (s5)	125	105	52	Ok
6	CPU (s6)	125	105	52	Ok
6	PCISW (s7)	110	100	47	Ok
6	L2L3Dev1Sn1 (s8)	125	115	60	Ok
6	L2L3Dev1Sn2 (s9)	125	115	69	Ok
6	L3Lkup1Sn1 (s10)	125	105	57	Ok
6	L3Lkup1Sn2 (s11)	125	105	58	Ok
6	L2L3Dev2Sn1 (s12)	125	115	57	Ok
6	L2L3Dev2Sn2 (s13)	125	115	63	Ok
6	L3Lkup2Sn1 (s14)	125	105	54	Ok
6	L3Lkup2Sn2 (s15)	125	105	56	Ok
7	Crossbar1 (s1)	125	115	49	Ok
7	Crossbar2 (s2)	125	115	63	Ok
7	Arb-muxSn0 (s3)	125	105	57	Ok
7	Arb-muxSn1 (s4)	125	105	59	Ok
7	CPU (s5)	125	105	51	Ok
7	CPU (s6)	125	105	51	Ok
7	PCISW (s7)	110	100	46	Ok
7	L2L3Dev1Sn1 (s8)	125	115	59	Ok
7	L2L3Dev1Sn2 (s9)	125	115	64	Ok
7	L3Lkup1Sn1 (s10)	125	105	56	Ok
7	L3Lkup1Sn2 (s11)	125	105	57	Ok
7	L2L3Dev2Sn1 (s12)	125	115	59	Ok
7	L2L3Dev2Sn2 (s13)	125	115	63	Ok
7	L3Lkup2Sn1 (s14)	125	105	55	Ok
7	L3Lkup2Sn2 (s15)	125	105	57	Ok
8	Crossbar1 (s1)	125	115	48	Ok
8	Crossbar2 (s2)	125	115	63	Ok
8	Arb-muxSn0 (s3)	125	105	59	Ok
8	Arb-muxSn1 (s4)	125	105	61	Ok
8	CPU (s5)	125	105	56	Ok
8	CPU (s6)	125	105	56	Ok
8	PCISW (s7)	110	100	47	Ok
8	L2L3Dev1Sn1 (s8)	125	115	58	Ok
8	L2L3Dev1Sn2 (s9)	125	115	65	Ok
8	L3Lkup1Sn1 (s10)	125	105	56	Ok
8	L3Lkup1Sn2 (s11)	125	105	57	Ok
8	L2L3Dev2Sn1 (s12)	125	115	59	Ok

8	L2L3Dev2Sn2 (s13	125	115	66	Ok
8	L3Lkup2Sn1 (s14)	125	105	55	Ok
8	L3Lkup2Sn2 (s15)	125	105	56	Ok
9	Inlet (s1)	60	42	17	Ok
9	Crossbar (s2)	125	115	64	Ok
9	L2L3Dev1 (s3)	125	110	42	Ok
9	Arbiter (s4)	125	105	57	Ok
9	CPU1CORE1 (s5)	85	75	29	Ok
9	CPU1CORE2 (s6)	85	75	27	Ok
9	CPU1CORE3 (s7)	85	75	30	Ok
9	CPU1CORE4 (s8)	85	75	29	Ok
9	CPU2CORE1 (s9)	85	75	24	Ok
9	CPU2CORE2 (s10)	85	75	21	Ok
9	CPU2CORE3 (s11)	85	75	23	Ok
9	CPU2CORE4 (s12)	85	75	21	Ok
9	DDR3DIMM1 (s13)	95	85	28	Ok
9	DDR3DIMM2 (s14)	95	85	27	Ok
9	DDR3DIMM4 (s16)	95	85	21	Ok
9	DDR3DIMM5 (s17)	95	85	22	Ok
10	L2L3Dev1 (s3)	125	110	49	Ok
10	Arbiter (s4)	125	105	61	Ok
10	CPU1CORE1 (s5)	85	75	41	Ok
10	CPU1CORE2 (s6)	85	75	37	Ok
10	CPU1CORE3 (s7)	85	75	39	Ok
10	CPU1CORE4 (s8)	85	75	38	Ok
10	CPU2CORE1 (s9)	85	75	26	Ok
10	CPU2CORE2 (s10)	85	75	23	Ok
10	CPU2CORE3 (s11)	85	75	24	Ok
10	CPU2CORE4 (s12)	85	75	22	Ok
10	DDR3DIMM1 (s13)	95	85	30	Ok
10	DDR3DIMM2 (s14)	95	85	28	Ok
10	DDR3DIMM4 (s16)	95	85	25	Ok
10	DDR3DIMM5 (s17)	95	85	26	Ok

switch#

Displaying Temperatures for Modules

Each supervisor, I/O, and fabric module has temperature sensors with two thresholds:

- Minor temperature threshold—When a minor threshold is exceeded, a minor alarm occurs and the following actions occur for all four sensors:
 - Displays system messages
 - Sends Call Home alerts (if configured)
 - Sends SNMP notifications (if configured)
- Major temperature threshold—When a major threshold is exceeded, a major alarm occurs and the following actions occur:
 - For sensors 1, 3, and 4 (outlet and onboard sensors), the following actions occur:
 - Displays system messages.
 - Sends Call Home alerts (if configured). For more information, refer [Associating an Alert Group with a Destination Profile](#).

- Sends SNMP notifications (if configured). For more information, refer [Enabling SNMP Notifications](#).
- For sensor 2 (intake sensor), the following actions occur:
 - If the threshold is exceeded in a switching module, only that module is shut down.
 - If the threshold is exceeded in an active supervisor module with HA-standby or standby present, only that supervisor module is shut down and the standby supervisor module takes over.
 - If you do not have a standby supervisor module in your switch, you have up to 2 minutes to decrease the temperature. During this interval, the software monitors the temperature every 5 seconds and continuously sends system messages as configured.



Tip We recommend that you install dual supervisor modules. If you are using a switch without dual supervisor modules, we recommend that you immediately replace the fan module if just one fan is not working.



Note A threshold value of -127 indicates that no thresholds are configured or applicable.

You can display temperature readings for module temperature sensors by using the **show environment temperature** command.

Enter the **show environment temperature** command.

Example:

```
switch# show environment temperature
Temperature:
```

Module	Sensor	MajorThresh (Celsius)	MinorThres (Celsius)	CurTemp (Celsius)	Status
1	Crossbar (s5)	105	95	60	Ok
1	QEng1Sn1 (s12)	115	110	70	Ok
1	QEng1Sn2 (s13)	115	110	68	Ok
1	QEng1Sn3 (s14)	115	110	67	Ok
1	QEng1Sn4 (s15)	115	110	68	Ok
1	QEng2Sn1 (s16)	115	110	70	Ok
1	QEng2Sn2 (s17)	115	110	68	Ok
1	QEng2Sn3 (s18)	115	110	68	Ok
1	QEng2Sn4 (s19)	115	110	68	Ok
1	L2Lookup (s27)	115	105	57	Ok
1	L3Lookup (s28)	120	110	62	Ok
2	Crossbar (s5)	105	95	65	Ok
2	QEng1Sn1 (s12)	115	110	70	Ok
2	QEng1Sn2 (s13)	115	110	68	Ok
2	QEng1Sn3 (s14)	115	110	67	Ok
2	QEng1Sn4 (s15)	115	110	68	Ok
2	QEng2Sn1 (s16)	115	110	69	Ok
2	QEng2Sn2 (s17)	115	110	68	Ok
2	QEng2Sn3 (s18)	115	110	67	Ok

```

2      QEng2Sn4 (s19)  115      110      68      Ok
2      L2Lookup (s27) 115      105      56      Ok
2      L3Lookup (s28) 120      110      63      Ok
5      Outlet1 (s1)   125      125      49      Ok
5      Outlet2 (s2)   125      125      37      Ok
5      Intake (s3)    60       42       32      Ok
5      EOBC_MAC (s4)  105      95       43      Ok
5      CPU (s5)      105      95       40      Ok
5      Crossbar (s6)  105      95       61      Ok
5      Arbiter (s7)   110      100      67      Ok
5      CTSdev1 (s8)  115      105      43      Ok
5      InbFPGA (s9)  105      95       44      Ok
5      QEng1Sn1 (s10) 115      105      60      Ok
5      QEng1Sn2 (s11) 115      105      59      Ok
5      QEng1Sn3 (s12) 115      105      56      Ok
5      QEng1Sn4 (s13) 115      105      57      Ok
xbar-1 Outlet (s1)    125      125      38      Ok
xbar-1 Intake (s2)    60       42       32      Ok
xbar-1 Crossbar (s3)  105      95       56      Ok
xbar-2 Outlet (s1)    125      125      39      Ok
xbar-2 Intake (s2)    62       42       31      Ok
xbar-2 Crossbar (s3)  105      95       56      Ok
switch#

```

Connecting to a Module

At any time, you can connect to any module by using the **attach module** command. Once you are at the module prompt, you can obtain further details about the module by using module-specific commands in EXEC mode.

You can also use the **attach module** command to display the standby supervisor module information, although you cannot configure the standby supervisor module using this command.

Step 1 Enter the **attach module slot_number** command.

Example:

```
switch# attach module 4
switch(standby)#
```

Provides direct access to the specified module (in this example, the standby supervisor module is in slot 6).

Step 2 **dir bootflash**

Example:

```
switch(standby)# dir bootflash
Example:
switch# dir bootflash:
  80667580   Feb 21 22:04:59 2008  n7700-s2-kickstart.7.3.0.DX.1.bin
  22168064   Feb 21 22:04:19 2008  n7700-s2-dk9.7.3.0.DX.1.bin
    16384    Jan 03 19:56:00 2005  lost+found/
Usage for bootflash://sup-local
 234045440 bytes used
1684602880 bytes free
1918648320 bytes total
```

```
switch#
```

Provides the available space information for the standby supervisor module.

Note To exit the module-specific prompt, use the **exit** command.

Saving the Module Configuration

To save the new configuration along with the non-default VDC configuration to nonvolatile storage, use the **copy running-config startup-config vdc-all** command from EXEC mode. Once you enter these commands, the running and the startup copies of the configuration are identical.

The following table lists various scenarios when module configurations are preserved or lost.

Scenario	Consequence
A particular switching module is removed and you used the copy running-config startup-config vdc-all command again.	The configured module information is lost.
A particular switching module is removed and the same switching module is replaced before you enter the copy running-config startup-config vdc-all command again.	The configured module information is preserved.
A particular switching module is removed and replaced with the same type switching module, and you entered the reload module slot_number command.	The configured module information is preserved.
A particular switching module is reloaded when you enter the reload module slot_number command.	The configured module information is preserved.

Displaying Power Usage Information

To display the power usage information for the entire switch, use the **show environment power** command. This command shows the power usage for many of the modules installed in the switch. For the older modules that do not have the capability to output this information, the output is shown as N/A.



Note Power usage is reserved for both supervisor modules regardless of whether one or both supervisor modules are present.

Enter the **show environment power** command.

Reloading a Module

You can reset a module by using the **reload module** command and specifying the module by its slot number in the chassis.



Caution Reloading a module disrupts traffic through the module.

Step 1 Enter the **configure terminal** command to enter the configuration terminal mode.

Example:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)#
```

Step 2 Specify the slot number for the module that you are resetting by entering the **reload module slot_number** command.

Example:

```
switch(config)# reload module 1
```

Rebooting the Switch

To reboot or reload the switch, use the **reload** command without any options. When you use this command, you reboot the switch.



Note If you need to use the **reload** command, be sure to save the running configuration by using the **copy running-config startup-config vdc-all** command beforehand.

Step 1 Start the configuration mode by entering the **configure terminal** command.

Example:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)#
```

Step 2 Save the running configuration by entering the **copy running-config startup-config vdc-all** command.

Example:

```
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config vdc-all
```

Step 3 Reload the switch by entering the **reload** command.

Example:

```
switch(config)# reload
```

Overview of Supervisor Modules

The switch has one or two supervisor modules of the following types:

- Supervisor 2 Enhanced (N77-SUP2E)
- Supervisor 3 Enhanced (N77-SUP3E)



Note You can use only one type of supervisor module in a switch.

When a switch has two supervisors, one supervisor is automatically active while the other is in standby mode. If the active supervisor goes down or is disconnected for replacement, the standby supervisor automatically becomes active. If you need to replace one of two installed supervisor modules with another module, you can do this without interrupting operations—the supervisor that you are not replacing becomes the active supervisor and retains the kickstart configuration while you replace the other supervisor.

If the switch has just one supervisor, you can install the new supervisor in the open supervisor slot during operations and make that supervisor active after the installation.

Supervisor modules are automatically powered up and started with the switch.

Shutting Down a Supervisor Module

To shut down a supervisor module, use the **out-of-service module** command to specify the chassis slot with that module.

Step 1 Start the configuration mode by entering the **configure terminal** command.

Example:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)#
```

Step 2 Take the supervisor module out of service by entering the **out-of-service module** *slot_number* command.

Example:

```
switch(config)# out-of-service module 3
switch(config)#
```

Overview of I/O Module Support

The following table lists the I/O modules supported by the switch.

I/O Module	Supported Cisco Nexus FEX Models						
	2224TP	2232PP	2232TM	2232TM-E	2248PQ	2248TP	2248TP-E
F2-Series Enhanced 48-port 1- and 10-GE with XL (N77F248XP23)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
F3-Series Enhanced 48-port 1-/10-GE with XL (N77F348XP23)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
F3-Series Enhanced 24-port 40-GE with XL (N77F324FQ25)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
F3-Series Enhanced 12-port 100-GE with XL (N77F312CK26)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
F4-Series 30-port 100-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77F430CQ36)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
M3-Series 48-port 1-/10-GE (N77M348XP21)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
M3-Series 24-port 40-GE (N77M324FQ21)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
M3-Series 12-port 100-GE (N77M312CQ21)	No	No	No	No	No	No	No

The following F3-Series modules are supported by the Cisco Nexus 7700 Series switches:

- F3-Series Enhanced 48-port 1-/10-G Ethernet with XL (N77-F348XP-23)
- F3-Series Enhanced 24-port 40-G Ethernet with XL (N77-F324FQ-25)
- F3-Series Enhanced 12-port 100-G Ethernet with XL (N77-F312CK-26)

The following F4-Series module is supported by the Cisco Nexus 7700 Series switches:

- F4-Series 30-port 100-G Ethernet (N77-F430CQ-36)

The following M3 Series modules are supported by the Cisco Nexus 7700 Series switches:

- M3-Series 48-port 1-/10-G Ethernet (N77-M348XP-23L)
- M3-Series 24-port 40-G Ethernet (N77-M324FQ-25L)
- M3-Series 12-port 100-G Ethernet (N77-M312CQ-26L)

Accessing an I/O Module through a Console

You can troubleshoot bootup problems for an I/O module by accessing the module through its console port. This action establishes a console mode that you must exit in order to use other Cisco NX-OS commands.

To attach to the console port for an I/O module, use the **attach console module** command to specify the module you need to work with. Specify a slot from 1 to 2 or from 5 to 6.



Note To exit the console mode, enter the ~, command.

Attach to the console port for the I/O module by entering the **attach console module slot_number** command.

Example:

```
switch# attach console module 1
connected
Escape character is '~,' (tilde comma)
```

Displaying Information for the Installed Modules

You can display information about the modules installed in the switch chassis by using the **show module** command. This information includes module type, bootup status, MAC addresses, serial numbers, software versions, and hardware versions. You can use this command in the following ways to display information about all of the installed module or specific modules:

- For information on all modules, use the **show module** command.
- For information on a specific supervisor or I/O module, use the **show module slot_number** command to specify a slot number.

- For information on a specific fabric module, use the **show module xbar slot_number** command to specify a slot number.

For a description of the module status indicated by one of the above **show module** commands, see the following table.

I/O Module State	Description
powered up	The hardware has electrical power. When the hardware is powered up, the software begins booting.
testing	The module has established connection with the supervisor and the module is performing bootup diagnostics.
initializing	The diagnostics have completed successfully and the configuration is being downloaded.
failure	The switch detects a module failure upon initialization and automatically attempts to power-cycle the module three times. After the third attempt, the module powers down.
ok	The switch is ready to be configured.
power-denied	The switch detects insufficient power for an I/O module to power up.
active	This module is the active supervisor module and the switch is ready to be configured.
HA-standby	The HA switchover mechanism is enabled on the standby supervisor module.

Displaying Information for All Installed Modules

Displaying Information for a Specific Supervisor or I/O Module

Displaying Information for a Specific Fabric Module

```
switch# show module
Mod  Ports  Module-Type                Model                Status
---  -
1    48     1/10 Gbps Ethernet Module  N77-M348XP-23L      ok
2    24     10/40 Gbps Ethernet Module N77-M324FQ-25L      ok
3    0       Supervisor Module-3        N77-SUP3E            active *
4    0       Supervisor Module-3        N77-SUP3E            ha-standby

5    30     100 Gbps Ethernet Module   N77-F430CQ-36       ok
6    48     1/10 Gbps Ethernet Module   N77-F348XP-23       ok
```

```
Mod  Sw                Hw
---  -
1    8.3(0)SK(0.47)    0.203
2    8.3(0)SK(0.47)    0.203
3    8.3(0)SK(0.47)    0.909
4    8.3(0)SK(0.47)    0.203
5    8.3(0)SK(0.47)    0.203
6    8.3(0)SK(0.47)    0.203
```

```
Mod  MAC-Address(es)                Serial-Num
---  -

```



```

1 50-06-ab-91-05-a0 to 50-06-ab-91-05-d3 JAE194108S6
2 00-57-d2-0a-9c-c0 to 00-57-d2-0a-9d-23 JAE194507M4
3 0c-68-03-28-d9-58 to 0c-68-03-28-d9-6a JAE172704C3
4 1c-df-0f-79-17-6d to 1c-df-0f-79-17-7f JAE171807ZJ
5 00-27-90-a1-9a-20 to 00-27-90-a1-9a-83 JAE214303MP
6 e8-ed-f3-e4-c8-e8 to e8-ed-f3-e4-c9-1f JAE17360CZA
    
```

```

Mod Online Diag Status
---
1 Pass
2 Pass
3 Pass
4 Pass
5 Pass
6 Pass
    
```

Xbar	Ports	Module-Type	Model	Status
1	0	Fabric Module 3	N77-C7706-FAB-3	ok
2	0	Fabric Module 3	N77-C7706-FAB-3	ok
3	0	Fabric Module 3	N77-C7706-FAB-3	ok
4	0	Fabric Module 3	N77-C7706-FAB-3	ok
5	0	Fabric Module 3	N77-C7706-FAB-3	ok
6	0	Fabric Module 3	N77-C7706-FAB-3	ok

Xbar	Sw	Hw
1	NA	0.705
2	NA	0.703
3	NA	0.703
4	NA	0.703
5	NA	0.703
6	NA	0.703

Xbar	MAC-Address(es)	Serial-Num
1	NA	JAE213604M9
2	NA	JAE212106WA
3	NA	JAE212106VM
4	NA	JAE212106W6
5	NA	JAE212106WX
6	NA	JAE212106X3

* this terminal session
switch#

switch# **show module 1**

Mod	Ports	Module-Type	Model	Status
1	30	100 Gbps Ethernet Module	N77-F430CQ-36	ok

Mod	Sw	Hw
1	8.3(0)SK(0.47)	0.203

Mod	MAC-Address(es)	Serial-Num
1	00-27-90-a1-ab-50 to 00-27-90-a1-ab-b3	JAE214303LW

```

Mod Online Diag Status
---
    
```

```

1    Pass

Chassis Ejector Support: Enabled
Ejector Status:
Left ejector CLOSE, Right ejector CLOSE, Module HW does support
ejector based shutdown, Ejector policy enabled.
switch#

switch# show module xbar 1
Xbar Ports  Module-Type                Model                Status
-----
1    0    Fabric Module 3                N77-C7706-FAB-3    ok

Xbar Sw      Hw
-----
1    NA      0.705

Xbar MAC-Address(es)                Serial-Num
-----
1    NA      JAE213604M9

Chassis Ejector Support: Enabled
Ejector Status:
Top ejector OPEN, Bottom ejector OPEN, Module HW does not support ejector
based shutdown, Ejector policy disabled.
switch#

```

Purging the Module Configuration

You can clear the running configuration for an I/O slot that is not functioning by using the **purge module** command in EXEC mode.



Note This command does not work on supervisor slots nor on any I/O slot that currently has a powered-up module.

Before you begin

Verify that either the I/O slot is empty or the I/O module installed in the slot is powered down.

Clear the running configuration by using the **purge module *slot_number* running-config** command.

Example:

```
switch# purge module 1 running-config
```

Example

For example, suppose you create an IP storage configuration with a 48-port 10/100/1000 Ethernet I/O module in slot 3 of Switch A. This module uses an IP address. You decide to remove this I/O module and move it to Switch B, and you no longer need the IP address. If you try to configure this unused IP address, you will receive an error message that prevents you from proceeding with the

configuration. In this case, you need to enter the **purge module 3 running-config** command to clear the old configuration in Switch A before using the IP address.

Shut Down or Power Up an I/O Module

You can shutdown or power up an I/O module by using the **poweroff module** or **no poweroff module** command to specify the module by its slot number in the chassis.

Step 1 Start the configuration mode by entering the **configure terminal** command.

Example:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)#
```

Step 2 Shutdown the module by entering the **[no] shutdown module slot_number** command.

Example:

```
switch(config)# poweroff module 1
switch(config)#
```

Example:

```
switch(config)# no poweroff module 1
switch(config)#
```

Overview of Fabric Module Support

This switch supports the following fabric modules:

- Fabric 2 (N77-C7706-FAB-2)
- Fabric 3 (N77-C7706-FAB-3)



Note You can replace a Fabric 2 module with a Fabric 3 module during operations, but while there is a mix of fabric module types, all of the fabric modules perform as Fabric 2 modules. If you reload a switch with Fabric 2 and Fabric 3 modules installed, only the Fabric 3 modules will power up. To utilize the Fabric 3 module capabilities, all of the installed fabric modules must be Fabric 3 modules.

Change the Amount of Power Reserved for Fabric Modules

By default, each switch reserves enough power for the maximum quantity of fabric modules that can be installed in its chassis. If you have installed fewer than the maximum number of fabric modules and need to free up unused reserve power for I/O modules, you can power down the unused slots and specify a smaller maximum number of modules.

To specify a different maximum number of fabric modules for your system, use the hardware fabrics max number command. To verify the status of the installed fabric modules, use the **show module xbar** command. To verify the amount of reserved power, use the **show environment power** command.

Before you begin

- Make sure that the fabric modules that you are using are installed in slots 1 through x where x is the new maximum number of fabric modules.

You do not have to fill all of the fabric slots, but the fabric modules that you install must be in slots 1 through x . For example, if you specify 4 as the new maximum number of fabric modules, you must make sure that the fabric modules that you are using are in slots 1 through 4.

- Make sure that each of the installed fabric modules is powered up by using the **no poweroff xbar slot_number** command (see [Shutting Down or Powering Up a Fabric Module, on page 72](#)).
- Power down the unused slots by using the **poweroff xbar slot_number** command (see [Shutting Down or Powering Up a Fabric Module, on page 72](#)).

Step 1 Start the configuration mode by entering the **configure terminal** command.

Example:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)#
```

Step 2 Power off specific a specific fabric module by using the **hardware fabrics max quantity** command. Use a digit between 1 and 6, inclusive.

Example:

```
switch(config)# hardware fabrics max 4
switch(config)#
```

Shutting Down or Powering Up a Fabric Module

To shut down a fabric module, use either the **out-of-service xbar** command or the **poweroff xbar** command. If you use the **poweroff xbar** command, the slot remains in that state until you use the **no poweroff** command. If you use the **out-of-service xbar** command, the out-of-service state remains in effect until you do something like remove the module and replace it with another module.



Note If you are going to limit the maximum number of fabric modules, make sure that powered-on fabric modules are in the first n fabric module slots, where n is the new maximum number of fabric modules. For example, if you are limiting the maximum number of fabric modules to 4, you must make sure that the four powered-on fabric modules are in fabric slots 1 through 4.

If you are powering up more fabric modules than allowed by the current maximum number of fabric modules, then make sure that the fabric modules that you are powering up are installed in the first n fabric slots (slots 1 through n), power-on those modules with the **no poweroff xbar** command, and change the maximum number of fabric modules to n (see [Change the Amount of Power Reserved for Fabric Modules, on page 71](#)).

Step 1 Start the configuration mode by entering the **configure terminal** command.

Example:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)#
```

Step 2 Shut down or power up the specified fabric module by entering the **[no] shutdown xbar slot_number** command.

Example:

```
switch(config)# poweroff xbar 1
switch(config)#
```

Example:

```
switch(config)# no poweroff xbar 1
switch(config)#
```

Power Modes Overview

You can configure one of the following power modes to either use the combined power provided by the installed power supply units (no power redundancy) or to provide power redundancy when there is a power loss:

Combined mode

This mode allocates the combined power of all power supplies to active power for switch operations. This mode does not allocate reserve power for power redundancy in case of power outages or power supply failures.

Power-supply ($n+1$) redundancy mode

This mode allocates one power supply as a reserve power supply in case an available power supply fails. The remaining power supplies are allocated for available power. The reserve power supply must be at least as powerful as each power supply used for the available power.

Input-source (grid) redundancy mode

This mode allocates half of the power to available power and the other half to reserve power. You must use a different power source for the active and reserve power sources so that if the power source used for active power fails, the other power source used for the reserve power can provide power for the switch.

Full redundancy mode

This mode provides both power-supply ($n+1$) and input-source (grid) redundancies. As happens with the input-source redundancy mode, this mode allocates half of the power supplies to provide available power and the other half of the power supplies to provide the reserve power. One of the reserve power supplies can alternatively be used to provide power if a power supply supplying the available power fails.

Guidelines for Configuring Power Redundancy Modes

The amounts of available and reserve power depend on the power redundancy mode that you specify and the number of power supplies installed in the switch. For each redundancy mode, consider the following:

Combined mode

The available power equals the combined output of all installed power supplies. There is no reserve power. You activate this mode by using the **power redundancy-mode combined** command.

Power supply ($n+1$) redundancy mode

The power supply that outputs the most power provides the reserve power so that it can take over for any other power supply that fails, and all of the other installed power supplies provide the available power. You activate this power mode by using the **power redundancy-mode ps-redundant** command.

Input-source (grid) redundancy mode

The available power is provided by one power source and the reserve power is provided by the other power source. If the power source providing the available power fails, the switch uses the reserve power source to provide its required power. You activate this power mode by using the **power redundancy-mode insrc_redundant** command.

Full redundancy mode

Full redundancy provides both power-supply redundancy and input-source redundancy. For power-supply redundancy, the power supply with the most output provides reserve power and the other power supplies provide the available power. For input-source redundancy, the available power is provided by one power source and the reserve power is provided by another power source. You activate this power mode by using the **power redundancy-mode redundant** command.

Configuring the Power Mode

You can configure the power supply mode by using the **power redundancy-mode** command.



Note To display the current power supply configuration, use the **show environment power** command.

Step 1 Start the configuration mode by entering the **configure terminal** command.

Example:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)#
```

Step 2 Specify one of the following power modes by entering the **power redundancy-mode mode** command:

- For combined mode, include the **combined** keyword.
- For power supply redundancy mode, include the **ps-redundant** keyword.
- For input source redundancy mode, include the **insrc_redundant** keyword.
- For full redundancy mode, include the **redundant** keyword.

Example:

```
switch(config)# power redundancy-mode redundant
switch(config)#
```

Maximum Power Available for 3-kW AC Power Supplies

The maximum power available for operations depends on the input power from your power source, the number and output capabilities of your power supplies, and the power redundancy mode that you use. The following table lists the amount of power available for 3-kW AC power supplies depending on power inputs, numbers of power supplies, and the mode used.

Power Inputs	Power Supplies	Combined Mode	Power Supply Redundancy Mode	Input Source Redundancy Mode	Full Redundancy Mode
1 input (220 V)	1	3000 W	—	—	—
	2	6000 W	3000 W	3000 W	3000 W
	3	9000 W	6000 W	3000 W	3000 W
	4	12000 W	9000 W	6000 W	6000 W
1 input (110 V)	1	1450 W	—	—	—
	2	2900 W	1450 W	1450 W	1450 W
	3	4350 W	2900 W	1450 W	1450 W
	4	5800 W	4350 W	2900 W	2900 W

Maximum Power Available for 3-kW DC Power Supplies

The maximum power available for operations depends on the input power from your power source, the number and output capabilities of your power supplies, and the power redundancy mode that you use. The following table lists the amount of power available for 3-kW DC power supplies depending on power inputs, numbers of power supplies, and the mode used.

Power Inputs	Power Supplies	Combined Mode	Power Supply Redundancy Mode	Input Source Redundancy Mode	Full Redundancy Mode
1 input	1	3000 W	—	—	—
	2	6000 W	3000 W	3000 W	3000 W
	3	9000 W	6000 W	3000 W	3000 W
	4	12000 W	9000 W	6000 W	6000 W

Maximum Power Available for 3.5-kW Inputs (AC)

The maximum power available for operations depends on the input power from your power source, the number and output capabilities of your power supplies, and the power redundancy mode that you use. The following table lists the amount of power available for 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC power supplies depending on AC power inputs, number of power supplies, and the mode used.

Power Inputs	Power Supplies	Combined Mode	Power Supply Redundancy Mode	Input Source Redundancy Mode	Full Redundancy Mode
1 input (277 V)	1	3500 W	—	—	—
	2	7000 W	3500 W	3500 W	3500 W
	3	10,500 W	7000 W	3500 W	3500 W
	4	14,000 W	10,500 W	7000 W	7000 W
1 input (220/230 V)	1	3500 W	—	—	—
	2	7000 W	3500 W	3500 W	3500 W
	3	10,500 W	7000 W	3500 W	3500 W
	4	14,000 W	10,500 W	7000 W	7000 W
1 input (210 V)	1	3100 W	—	—	—
	2	6200 W	3100 W	3100 W	3100 W
	3	9300 W	6200 W	3100 W	3100 W
	4	12,400 W	9300 W	6200 W	6200 W
1 input (110 V)	1	1500 W	—	—	—
	2	3000 W	1500 W	1500 W	1500 W
	3	4500 W	3000 W	1500 W	1500 W
	4	6000 W	4500 W	3000 W	3000 W



Note A combination of 3-kW AC and 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC power supplies can be used.

Maximum Power Available for 3.5-kW Inputs (DC)

The maximum power available for operations depends on the input power from your power source, the number and output capabilities of your power supplies, and the power redundancy mode that you use. The following table lists the amount of power available for 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC power supplies depending on DC power inputs, number of power supplies, and the mode used.

Power Inputs	Power Supplies	Combined Mode	Power Supply Redundancy Mode	Input Source Redundancy Mode	Full Redundancy Mode
1 input (380 V)	1	3,500 W	—	—	—
	2	7,000 W	3,500 W	3,500 W	3,500 W
	3	10,500 W	7,000 W	3,500 W	3,500 W
	4	14,000 W	10,500 W	7,000 W	7,000 W
1 input (220/240 V)	1	3,500 W	—	—	—
	2	7,000 W	3,500 W	3,500 W	3,500 W
	3	10,500 W	7,000 W	3,500 W	3,500 W
	4	14,000 W	10,500 W	7,000 W	7,000 W
1 input (210 V)	1	3,100 W	—	—	—
	2	6,200 W	3,100 W	3,100 W	3,100 W
	3	9,300 W	6,200 W	3,100 W	3,100 W
	4	12,400 W	9,300 W	6,200 W	6,200 W



Note A combination of 3-kW DC and 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC power supplies can be used.

Overview of Fan Trays

The Cisco Nexus 7706 switch supports two types of fan trays:

- 38 mm Gen 1 Fan Tray (N77-C7706-FAN)
- 76 mm Gen 2 Fan Tray (N77-C7706-FAN-2)—Use this fan tray for Network Equipment Building System (NEBS) compliance when the Cisco Nexus 7700 M3-Series 12-port 100-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-M312CQ-26L) or the Cisco Nexus 7700 F4-Series 30-port 100-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F430CQ-36) is installed on the switch.



Note During normal switch operations, all 3 fan trays in a switch should be of the same type.

Fan trays provide airflow through a switch for cooling. Each fan tray contains multiple fans to provide redundancy. The switch can continue functioning in the following situations:

- One or more fans fail within a fan tray—Even with multiple fan failures, the switch can continue functioning. When a fan fails within a tray, the functioning fans in the module increase their speed to compensate for the failed fans. If a fan fails, the failed fan has to be replaced.

The following is a sample output displaying a fan failure, along with the associated syslogs:

```
switch# show environment fan
Fan:
-----
Fan           Model                Hw           Status
-----
Fan1(sys_fan1)  N77-C7706-FAN-2     1.0         Failure(Failed Fanlets: 2 )
Fan2(sys_fan2)  N77-C7706-FAN-2     1.0         Ok
Fan3(sys_fan3)  N77-C7706-FAN-2     1.0         Ok
Fan_in_PS1     --                  --          Ok
Fan_in_PS2     --                  --          Ok
Fan_in_PS3     --                  --          Shutdown
Fan_in_PS4     --                  --          Ok
--More--2017 Mar 15 01:45:40 switch-m3100scale %$ VDC-1 %$ %PLATFORM-1-PFM_ALERT:
FAN_BAD: fan1
Fan Zone Speed %(Hex): Zone 1: 100.00(0xff)
switch#
```

- The fan tray is removed for replacement—The fan tray is designed to be removed and replaced while a switch is operating, without presenting an electrical hazard or damage to the switch. Starting from Cisco NX-OS Release 7.2(0)D1(1), use the **hardware fan-tray maintenance-mode [long | medium | short]** command to put the switch in fan tray maintenance mode to prepare for fan tray removal and replacement. For more information, see [Replacing a Fan Tray](#). You have up to 72 hours to replace a fan tray as long as the switch air-inlet temperature does not exceed 86° Fahrenheit (30° C). If the temperature exceeds 86° Fahrenheit (30° C), the switch will shut down in 3 minutes.



Note The switch will shut down if a mix of Gen 1 (N77-C7706-FAN) and Gen 2 (N77-C7706-FAN-2) fan trays are present in the same switch for more than 21600 seconds (6 hours). The syslog message "PLATFORM-0-FAN_MISMATCH_TIME: Mismatch of Fan modules. Both Gen1 and Gen2 fans are present in the fantray for <number> seconds" will be displayed at regular intervals when both Gen 1 and Gen 2 fan trays are present in the same switch.

- If you remove more than one fan tray at a time, the switch can operate up to three minutes before shutting down. To prevent a shutdown, remove only one fan tray at a time.



Note

- We recommend that you do not remove more than one fan tray at a time.
- When a fan fails or when you remove a fan tray, the remaining operating fans speed up to compensate for the loss of fans. This can increase the noise made by the fan trays until you replace the missing fan tray or replace the defective fan tray.
- When replacing a failed fan tray in a running system, be sure to promptly replace the fan tray.



Caution If one or more fans fail within a fan tray, the Fan Status LED turns red. A fan failure could lead to temperature alarms if not corrected immediately.

The fan status is continuously monitored by the software. In case of a fan failure, the following actions occur:

- System messages are displayed.
- Call Home alerts are sent (if configured). For more information, refer [Associating an Alert Group with a Destination Profile](#).
- SNMP notifications are sent (if configured). For more information, refer [Enabling SNMP Notifications](#).

Each of the three fan trays cover two fabric modules as follows:

- Fan tray in slot 41 covers the fabric modules in slots 21 and 22.
- Fan tray in slot 42 covers the fabric modules in slots 23 and 24.
- Fan tray in slot 43 covers the fabric modules in slots 25 and 26.

If you need to replace a fabric module, you must remove the fan tray covering the fabric module before you replace the fabric module. You must replace the fabric module and its covering fan tray within three minutes or an overtemperature condition can occur.

Displaying the Status for the Fan Trays

Enter the **show environment fan** command.

Example:

```
switch# show environment fan
Fan:
-----
Fan          Model          Hw          Status
-----
Fan1(sys_fan1) N77-C7706-FAN-2  0.100      Ok
Fan2(sys_fan2) N77-C7706-FAN-2  0.100      Ok
Fan3(sys_fan3) N77-C7706-FAN-2  0.100      Ok
Fan_in_PS1    --             --          Ok
Fan_in_PS2    --             --          Ok
Fan_in_PS3    --             --          Ok
Fan_in_PS4    --             --          Ok
Fan Zone Speed %(Hex): Zone 1: 45.88(0x75)
```




CHAPTER 6

Installing or Replacing Modules, Fan Trays, and Power Supplies

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Using an ESD Wrist Strap to Prevent ESD Damage, on page 81](#)
- [Installing or Replacing a Supervisor Module, on page 82](#)
- [Migrating from Supervisor 2E Modules \(N77-SUP2E\) to Supervisor 3E Modules \(N77-SUP3E\), on page 86](#)
- [Nondisruptive Migration from Supervisor 2E Modules \(N77-SUP2E\) to Supervisor 3E Modules \(N77-SUP3E\), on page 89](#)
- [Installing or Replacing an I/O Module, on page 110](#)
- [Replacing a Fan Tray, on page 112](#)
- [Migrating from Gen 1 Fan Trays \(N77-C7706-FAN\) to Gen 2 Fan Trays \(N77-C7706-FAN-2\), on page 116](#)
- [Installing or Replacing a Fabric Module, on page 118](#)
- [Replacing Fabric 2 Modules with Fabric 3 Modules, on page 123](#)
- [Installing or Replacing a Power Supply in a Switch Chassis, on page 124](#)

Using an ESD Wrist Strap to Prevent ESD Damage

Before you touch any switch modules, you must ground yourself to protect the modules from electrostatic discharge (ESD). You can ground yourself by wearing an ESD wrist strap connected to a grounded chassis or a grounded rack.



Caution Always handle modules by their carrier edges (typically the covered bottom, sides, and front of the module) and never touch the circuitry on the module.

Before you begin

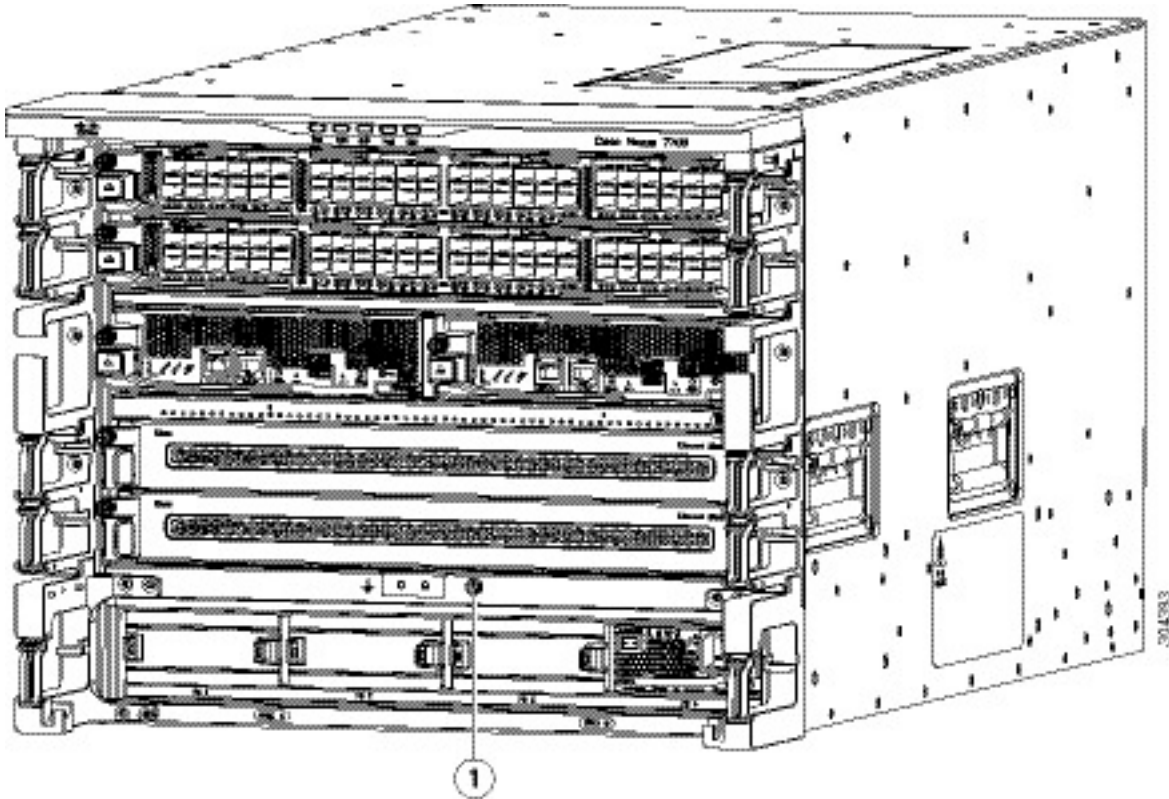
You must have a grounding connection close to where you are installing components in the chassis.

Step 1 Attach or wrap an ESD wrist strap to your arm.

Step 2 Attach the other end of the strap to the grounded chassis in one of the following ways:

- If the wrist strap has a banana plug on the other end, insert the plug into the ESD port on the chassis (see the following figure for the location of the port on the front of the chassis).

Figure 22: Location of the ESD Port on the Front of the Chassis



1	ESD port on the front of the chassis
---	--------------------------------------

- If the wrist strap has an alligator clip on the other end, clip that onto one of the two screws holding the grounding lug to the chassis.

What to do next

After you ground yourself, you can replace the modules on the chassis.

Installing or Replacing a Supervisor Module

You can install or replace a supervisor module during switch operations so long as there is another supervisor module installed and operating on the switch. If you eject the active supervisor from its slot in a chassis with two supervisor modules, operations automatically switch over to the standby supervisor module. If you need

to replace a supervisor in a chassis with just one supervisor, you can install the new supervisor in the open supervisor slot, make the new supervisor active, and remove the other supervisor module.



Note If you remove a supervisor module without replacing it, you must fill the slot with a blank filler plate to maintain the designed airflow for the chassis.

Before you begin



Caution The system will shut down when you remove the single supervisor module in the Cisco Nexus 7702 chassis.

- You must follow ESD protocols, including the following:
 - You must wear a grounded ESD wristband (or other personal grounding device) whenever you handle the electronic modules outside the grounded chassis.
 - You must carry electronic modules by only their covered edges or handles. Do not touch their electronic components.
 - Whenever a module is outside a grounded chassis, place it flat on an antistatic surface or in an antistatic bag. Never lean the module on anything nor place anything else on top of the module nor lean anything on the module.
- Verify that the chassis is grounded.
- Verify that you have the following tools and equipment:
 - ESD wrist strap (or other personal grounding device)
 - Number 1 Phillips torque screwdriver
Manual torque screwdrivers are recommended. Be sure to never exceed the recommended torque setting for the screw that you are working with.
 - Replacement supervisor module

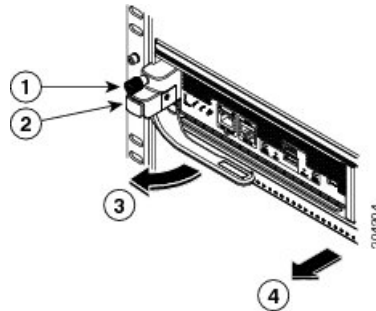
Step 1

If you need to remove a supervisor module to open the slot for a new module, follow these steps (if you already have an open slot, go to the next step):

Note If the slot that you need to open has a blank filler plate, remove the plate by unscrewing its captive screw and pulling on the handle attached to the plate to remove the plate, and go to Step 3).

- a) Disconnect all of the networking cables attached to the front of the module.
- b) Unscrew the captive screw on the left side of the module until the screw is no longer connected to the chassis (see Callout 1 in the following figure).

Figure 23: Removing a Half-Width Supervisor Module



1	Unscrew the captive screw until it is free of the chassis.	3	The handle springs open.
2	Press the ejector button.	4	Pull the handle to remove the module part way from the slot. Place your other hand under the module and fully remove it from the slot.

- c) Press the eject button on the left side of the module (see Step 2 in the previous figure).
The ejector springs out part way from the front of the module.
- d) Fully rotate the handle from the front of the module and pull the handle to move the module part way out of its slot.
- e) Place your other hand under the module to support its weight and pull the module fully out of its slot.
- f) Place the module on or in antistatic material.

Step 2 Install the new or replacement supervisor module as follows:

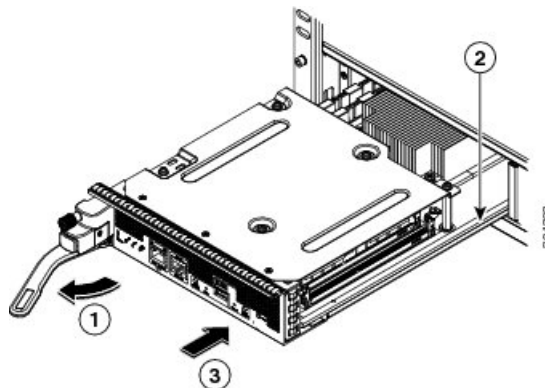
- a) Unpack the new supervisor module and inspect it for damage.

If anything is damaged or missing, contact your customer representative immediately.

Caution Do not touch the electrical components or connectors on the module. Always hold the module by only its covered front and bottom sides.

- b) Press the ejector button next to the handle to release the handle from the front of the module (see Callout 1 in the following figure).

Figure 24: Positioning a Half-Width Supervisor Module to its Slot



1	Rotate the handle fully away from the front of the module.	3	Push the module all the way into the slot (until it stops and the front is about 1/4 inch in front of the chassis).
2	Align the bottom of the module to the module guides in the slot.		

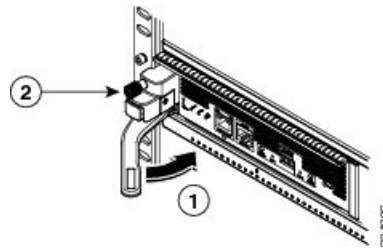
- c) Rotate the end of the handle away from the front of the module until it stops (see Callout 1 in the previous figure).
- d) With one hand under the supervisor module and the other hand holding the module by its front, align the rear of the module to the open supervisor slot.
- e) Slide the module onto the guides inside the slot and push the module fully into the slot until you cannot push the module further.

The front of the module should be about 1/4 inch (0.6 cm) in front of the chassis.

- f) Rotate the handle to the front of the module (see Callout 1 in the following figure) until it clicks when it reaches the front of the module.

The module should be fully inserted in the slot and the front of the module should be even with the fronts of all of the other installed modules. The captive screw by the ejector button on the module should be aligned to a screw hole on the chassis.

Figure 25: Securing a Supervisor Module to its Slot



1	Rotate the handle all the way to the front of the module.	2	Tighten the captive screw to 8 in-lb (0.9 N·m) of torque.
---	---	---	---

- g) Screw in the captive screw to secure the module to the chassis (see Callout 2 in the previous figure). Tighten the screw to 8 in-lb (0.9 N·m) of torque.
- h) Verify that the supervisor module LEDs turn on and appear as follows:
 - STATUS LED is green.
 - SYSTEM LED is green.
 - ACTIVE LED is amber or green.

For more information about the LED states for this module, see [Supervisor Module LEDs, on page 182](#).

- i) Attach the management cable to the MGMT ETH port.

The MGMT ETH LED should be green. If not, see [Supervisor Module LEDs, on page 182](#) for information about the LED states.

Migrating from Supervisor 2E Modules (N77-SUP2E) to Supervisor 3E Modules (N77-SUP3E)

To migrate from Supervisor 2E modules to Supervisor 3E modules, follow these steps:

Before you begin

- Before migrating from Supervisor 2E modules to Supervisor 3E modules, note the following guidelines:
 - This migration process is disruptive because the power must be turned off for the switch.
 - You cannot mix Supervisor 2E and Supervisor 3E modules in a production environment.

Step 1 Insert a USB drive in the usb1 or the slot0 USB port on the active supervisor 2E module. We will use the usb1 port for the steps given below.

Step 2 Format the drive by using the **format** command.

```
switch(config)# format usb1
```

Step 3 Copy all of the VDC configurations for the switch to the USB drive by using the **copy running-config** command.

```
switch(config)# copy running-config usb1:configuration_file_name vdc-all
```

Step 4 Backup the installed licenses for the switch to the USB drive by using the **copy licenses** command.

```
switch(config)# copy licenses usb1:licenses_archive_file_name.tar
```

Note You must use the **tar** extension for the archive file. This file will contain all of the license files that were installed on the Supervisor 2E module.

Step 5 Copy the Supervisor 3E version of the kickstart, system, and EPLD (optional) images to the USB drive by using the **copy** command.

```
switch(config)# copy scp://path/n7700-s3-kickstart.8.3.1.bin usb1:
```

```
switch(config)# copy scp://path/n7700-s3-dk9.8.3.1.bin usb1:
```

```
switch(config)# copy scp://path/n7700-s3-epld.8.3.1.img usb1:
```

Note This example specifies Cisco NX-OS Release 8.3(1) images. This is the minimum software release for the Cisco Nexus 7700 Series Supervisor 3E modules.

Caution Use -s3- images with Supervisor 3E modules. If you use an -s2- image with a Supervisor 3E module, the supervisor will not boot up. Some examples of an -s2- image are given below:

- n7700-s2-kickstart.8.0.1.bin
- n7700-s2-kickstart.8.1.1.bin
- n7700-s2-kickstart.8.2.1.bin

- Step 6** Turn off the power to the switch using the power switch on each power supply. The Output LED turns off on each power supply and the Status LEDs turn off on all of the supervisor and I/O modules.
- Caution** If any of the supervisor or I/O module Status LEDs is turned on (showing any color), stop at this step until you are able to turn off those modules.
- Step 7** For each Supervisor 2E module installed in the switch, remove the module and replace it with a Supervisor 3E module as explained in [Installing or Replacing a Supervisor Module, on page 82](#).
- Caution** If the switch has two supervisor modules, ensure that both supervisors are of the same type. Do not mix Supervisor 2E modules with Supervisor 3E modules.
- Step 8** Power up the switch by using the power switch on each of its power supplies. The Output LED on each power supply turns on and eventually turns green when the power supply is sending power to the switch. The Status LED on each installed supervisor module also turns on when the module begins to turn on. The supervisor that becomes active has a green ACTIVE LED (the standby supervisor module has an amber ACTIVE LED).
- Step 9** Remove the USB drive from the Supervisor 2E module (this drive has the copies of the Supervisor 2E configuration, license, and software images) and insert it in the USB port on the active Supervisor 3E module (ACTIVE LED is green).
- Step 10** Connect a console to the active supervisor module as explained in [Connecting a Console to the Switch, on page 44](#).
- Step 11** If you are setting up the initial configuration for the supervisor module, the initial setup script will ask you if you want to enforce the secure password standard. Make your selection, enter your password, and then confirm the password by entering it again.

```

----- System Admin Account Setup -----
Do you want to enforce secure password standard (yes/no) [y]:
  Enter the password for "admin":
  Enter the password for "admin":

```

- Step 12** When you are asked to enable admin VDCs, enter **no**.

```
Do you want to enable admin vdc (yes/no) [no]: no
```

- Step 13** When you are asked to enter the basic configuration, enter **no**.

```

----- Basic System Configuration Dialog VDC: 1 -----
This setup utility will guide you through the basic configuration of
the system. Setup configures only enough connectivity for management
of the system.

```

```

Please register Cisco Nexus7000 Family devices promptly with your
supplier. Failure to register may affect response times for initial
service calls. Nexus7000 devices must be registered to receive
entitled support services.

```

```

Press Enter at anytime to skip a dialog. Use ctrl-c at anytime
to skip the remaining dialogs.

```

```
Would you like to enter the basic configuration dialog (yes/no): no
```

- Step 14** When asked to log in, enter the login and password that you specified in step 11.

```

User Access Verification
switch login:
Password:

```

Step 15 Verify that the switch is running the required version of the NX-OS software by using the show version command.

```
switch(config)# show version
```

Note If the version of NX-OS is not the same as you intended to use, copy the previously saved images from the USB drive in usb1 to bootflash: and perform an upgrade to the appropriate version. For more information, see the [Cisco Nexus 7000 Series NX-OS Software Upgrade and Downgrade Guide](#).

Step 16 Copy the TAR archive containing the license files from the usb1 drive to bootflash:, extract the archive, and install the licenses by using the **copy**, **tar extract**, and **install license** commands. Repeat the **install license** command for each extracted license file.

```
switch(config)# copy usb1:licenses_archive_file_name.tar bootflash:
```

```
switch(config)# tar extract bootflash:licenses_archive_file_name.tar to bootflash:
```

```
switch(config)# install license bootflash:licenses_archive_file_name.lic
```

Note The **tar extract** command requires that the TAR file be located in bootflash: or volatile:.

Step 17 Make sure that all I/O modules are online and that the standby supervisor is in ha-standby mode by using the **show module** command.

```
switch(config)# show module
```

```
switch(config)# show module
Mod Ports Module-Type                               Model                               Status
-----
9    0    Supervisor module-3                               N77-SUP3E                           active *
10   0    Supervisor module-3                               N77-SUP3E                           ha-standby
12   30   100 Gbps Ethernet Module                         N77-F430CQ-36                        ok
...
```

Step 18 Restore the previously saved configurations by using the **copy** command to copy the configuration file in the USB drive to the running configuration.

```
switch(config)# copy usb1:configuration_file_name running-config
```

Note If the imported configuration file includes configurations for Fabric Extenders (FEXs) and those modules are not up yet, you will see error messages for that. If that happens, we recommend that you run the FEX configuration again after the FEX modules come online. You can verify the status of the FEX modules and for the associated server-facing interfaces by using the **show fex** and **show interface brief** commands.

Note If you have not inserted the standby supervisor module until now, do not insert it during this step. Instead, wait until you complete this procedure before installing the standby supervisor module.

Step 19 Save the configuration in the startup configuration by using the **copy running-config startup-config vdc-all** command.

```
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config vdc-all
```

Nondisruptive Migration from Supervisor 2E Modules (N77-SUP2E) to Supervisor 3E Modules (N77-SUP3E)

Nondisruptive Migration from Supervisor 2E Modules (N77-SUP2E) to Supervisor 3E Modules (N77-SUP3E) has the following limitations:

- Do not change any configuration settings or network connections during the upgrade.
- Configuration mode is blocked during the migration procedure to prevent any changes.
- You cannot press Control+C to abort the migration procedure until 45 minutes have elapsed since the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command has been used.
- Before you initiate the migration procedure, you must first remove QoS policies and ACLs from interfaces that are in the down state. The clear inactive-config qos command, that clears inactive configuration, will delete the port channel policies even if one of the ports in a port channel has inactive policies.

Guidelines for manual policy removal:

- During manual removal, when the interface is part of a port channel, remove the policy map or access list from the port channel or remove the interface from the port channel before initiating the migration procedure.
- For all other interface types, please remove the policy map or access list from the interface.
- The **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command that is used to initiate the non-disruptive migration process is only available in global config mode.
- Ensure that the Supervisor-3E module has not been inserted in the standby slot before using the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command. If the supervisor-3E module has already been inserted in the standby slot, the migration process will be aborted and the supervisor-3E module will be powered down.
- Do not reload or manually insert or remove any I/O or fabric module after using the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command. Any removal or insertion of I/O or fabric modules has to be done before initiating the migration process or after the migration is completed.
- Do not remove or insert any Fabric Extender (FEX) modules during migration.
- Insert the standby Supervisor-3E module into the chassis only when you are prompted to insert the Supervisor-3E module during migration by a message on the system console.
- After the Supervisor-3E module has been inserted during the migration process, do not remove or manually reload the standby Supervisor-3E module.
- Do not insert or remove any transceivers from any modules while the migration is in progress.
- Do not remove any power supply modules or fan modules during the migration process.
- Do not copy any configurations using the **copy running-config startup-config** command or the **copy running-config startup-config vdc-all** from any other management session while migration is in progress.
- Do not trigger any EPLD or BIOS upgrades during migration.
- Do not trigger any ISSU during migration.

- Do not perform migration from fabric module-2 to fabric module-3 during the supervisor-2E to supervisor-3E migration.
- Take a backup of the licenses and configuration before starting the migration procedure. In case of any failure or loss of licenses and configuration in Supervisor-2E, disruptive migration has to be done to upgrade to Supervisor- 3E. In such a scenario, all configurations and licenses have to be applied or installed again. Backup the installed licenses from the switch to a USB drive by using the **copy licenses** command. To view the current licenses installed on the switch, use the **show license** command.


```
switch# copy licenses usb1:<licenses_archive_file_name>.tar
```
- Ensure that there is sufficient power in the chassis before starting the migration process. In case of a power failure, redundant power supplies can then take over and migration will not be disrupted.
- Downgrade to supervisor-2E modules from supervisor-3E modules is a disruptive procedure.

Prerequisites for Nondisruptive Migration from Supervisor 2E Modules (N77-SUP2E) to Supervisor 3E Modules (N77-SUP3E)

- The minimum supported release for this procedure is Cisco NX-OS Release 8.4(1). If you are using an image older than Cisco NX-OS Release 8.4(1), upgrade to Cisco NX-OS Release 8.4(1), and then perform nondisruptive migration from Supervisor 2E modules to Supervisor 3E modules.
- We recommend that you use a console connection to perform the migration procedure. In case you do not have a console connection and are using an SSH/Telnet connection, use the **terminal monitor** command to display all the syslogs mentioned in the below procedures.
- Back up the running configuration from the current active supervisor module to the FTP/SFTP/TFTP server, or a USB flash drive.


```
switch# copy running-config ftp://[username[:password]@]server[/path]
or
switch# copy running-config usb1:<runningconfiguration>.txt
Copy complete, now saving to disk (please wait)...
```
- Before you initiate the migration procedure, you must first remove QoS policies and ACLs from interfaces that are in the down state. The `clear inactive-config qos` command, that clears inactive configuration, will delete the port channel policies even if one of the ports in a port channel has inactive policies.

Guidelines for manual policy removal:

- During manual removal, when the interface is part of a port channel, remove the policy map or access list from the port channel or remove the interface from the port channel before initiating the migration procedure.
- For all other interface types, please remove the policy map or access list from the interface.
- The **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command that is used to initiate the non-disruptive migration process is only available in global config mode.
- Ensure that the Supervisor-3E module has not been inserted in the standby slot before using the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command. If the supervisor-3E module has already been inserted in the standby slot, the migration process will be aborted and the supervisor-3E module will be powered down.

- Do not reload or manually insert or remove any I/O or fabric module after using the **migrate sup kickstart** `<sup3-kickstart-image> system <sup3-system-image>` command. Any removal or insertion of I/O or fabric modules has to be done before initiating the migration process or after the migration is completed.
- Do not remove or insert any Fabric Extender (FEX) modules during migration.
- Insert the standby Supervisor-3E module into the chassis only when you are prompted to insert the Supervisor-3E module during migration by a message on the system console.
- After the Supervisor-3E module has been inserted during the migration process, do not remove or manually reload the standby Supervisor-3E module.
- Do not insert or remove any transceivers from any modules while the migration is in progress.
- Do not remove any power supply modules or fan modules during the migration process.
- Do not copy any configurations using the **copy running-config startup-config** command or the **copy running-config startup-config vdc-all** from any other management session while migration is in progress.
- Do not trigger any EPLD or BIOS upgrades during migration.
- Do not trigger any ISSU during migration.
- Do not perform migration from fabric module-2 to fabric module-3 during the supervisor-2E to supervisor-3E migration.
- Take a backup of the licenses and configuration before starting the migration procedure. In case of any failure or loss of licenses and configuration in Supervisor-2E, disruptive migration has to be done to upgrade to Supervisor- 3E. In such a scenario, all configurations and licenses have to be applied or installed again. Backup the installed licenses from the switch to a USB drive by using the **copy licenses** command. To view the current licenses installed on the switch, use the **show license** command.

```
switch# copy licenses usb1:<licenses_archive_file_name>.tar
```
- Ensure that there is sufficient power in the chassis before starting the migration process. In case of a power failure, redundant power supplies can then take over and migration will not be disrupted.
- Downgrade to supervisor-2E modules from supervisor-3E modules is a disruptive procedure.

Case 1: Dual Supervisor Migration

To perform non-disruptive migration from Supervisor 2E modules to Supervisor 3E modules in a switch that has both active and standby supervisor modules installed, follow these steps:

Before you begin

The minimum supported release for this procedure is Cisco NX-OS Release 8.4(1). If you are using an image older than Cisco NX-OS Release 8.4(1), upgrade to Cisco NX-OS Release 8.4(1), and then perform nondisruptive migration from Supervisor 2E modules to Supervisor 3E modules.

Step 1

Copy the Cisco NX-OS Release 8.4(1) kickstart and system images to the active supervisor module bootflash, using an FTP or TFTP server.

```
switch# copy tftp://tftpserver.cisco.com/n7700/n7700-s3-kickstart.8.4.1.bin bootflash:n7700-s3-kickstart.8.4.1.bin
```

```
switch# copy tftp://tftpserver.cisco.com/n7700/n7700-s3-dk9.8.4.1.bin bootflash:system n7700-s3-dk9.8.4.1.bin
```

Step 2 Use the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command in config mode to initiate the migration process. This command triggers image version compatibility checks before initiating the migration process to ensure that the image being used is compatible with the supervisor 3E module.

- A message then appears on the console asking for confirmation to continue the migration procedure. Type **Yes** on the console prompt to continue with the migration procedure.
- Configuration commands are now blocked. The **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command will then check if it has to initiate a single supervisor or dual supervisor migration process by checking if there is a standby supervisor 2E module installed in the switch.
- The **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command will power down the standby supervisor 2E module installed in the switch.
- You can use the **show module** command to display the modules installed in the switch.

Sup2E syslogs

```
switch# show module
```

Mod	Ports	Module-Type	Model	Status
1	48	1/10 Gbps Ethernet Module	N77-F348XP-23	ok
2	30	10/25/40/100 Gbps Ethernet Module	N77-F430CQ-36	ok
3	0	Supervisor Module-2	N77-SUP2E	ha-standby
4	0	Supervisor Module-2	N77-SUP2E	active*
5	30	10/25/40/100 Gbps Ethernet Module	N77-F430CQ-36	ok
6	30	10/25/40/100 Gbps Ethernet Module	N77-F430CQ-36	powered-dn

```
switch(config)# migrate sup kickstart n7700-s3-kickstart.8.4.1.bin system n7700-s3-dk9.8.4.1.bin
```

This will start the Supervisor-2 to Supervisor-3 migration. Configuration will be locked until migration is complete.

```
Do you wish to continue (y/n) [n] y
```

```
<Thu May 16 01:10:11 2019> Starting migration, Please do not remove any linecards or fabric cards until migration is complete
```

```
<Thu May 16 01:10:11 2019> Standby supervisor in slot 3 has been powered down
```

Step 3 After the standby supervisor 2E module is powered down, remove the standby supervisor 2E module from the slot and replace it with the supervisor 3E module, as explained in the [Installing or Replacing a Supervisor Module](#) section. When the supervisor 3E module is detected in the standby supervisor slot, a netboot is initiated with the image that is provided by using the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command.

- Note**
- After removing the supervisor 2E module from the switch, you have to insert the replacement supervisor 3E module into the switch within a period of 30 minutes after using the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command. In case you have not inserted the supervisor 3E module within 30 minutes after using this command, migration is aborted and you have to use the command again to reinitiate the migration process.
 - After the supervisor 3E module is inserted in the slot, a timeout of 45 minutes is triggered for the supervisor 3E module to power up and come online. If the supervisor 3E module fails to power up and come online at the first attempt, a retry is initiated every 15 minutes. In case the supervisor 3E module fails to come online after 3 retries or 45 minutes, you have to remove the supervisor 3E module and restart the migration process by using the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command.

Sup2E syslogs

```
2019 Apr 23 22:36:35 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %PLATFORM-2-MOD_PWRDN: Module 3 powered down
(Serial number JAE21360CHS)
<Thu May 16 01:10:11 2019> Manual-boot is enabled for Standby Supervisor
<Thu May 16 01:10:11 2019> Please remove Supervisor-2 (N77-SUP2E) module from slot 3
and insert Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) module within 30 minutes
```

- Step 4** Wait for the supervisor 3E module to come up in HA-standby mode. After the new supervisor 3E module is detected by the switch, it may take up to 15 minutes for the supervisor 3E module to come online.

Sup2E syslogs

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> Supervisor-3 is detected in slot 4
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> Reloading standby. This might take upto 15 minutes.
Please wait ...
2019 May 16 01:10:19 Switch-m3 %$ VDC-3 %$ %PLATFORM-2-MOD_DETECT: Module 3 detected
(Serial number :unavailable) Module-Type Supervisor Module-3 Model :unavailable
<Thu May 16 01:10:21 2019> Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) is detected in slot 3
<Thu May 16 01:10:21 2019> Reloading standby. This might take up to 15 minutes. Please wait
2019 May 16 01:10:21 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %PLATFORM-2-PFM_STANDBY_MODULE_RESET_MIGRATION:
Reloading Standby Supervisor as part of Supervisor migration
<Thu May 16 01:12:21 2019> Standby supervisor not yet online. This might take sometime,
Please wait ...
2019 May 16 01:36:18 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %CARDCLIENT-2-SSE: MOD:3 SUP ONLINE
```

Sup3E syslogs

```
System is coming up ... Please wait ... System is
coming up ... Please wait ...
Switch(standby) login: 2019May 16 01:32:56 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %USBHSD-2-MOUNT:
logflash: online
adminbackup
Switch(standby)# 2019May 16 01:35:37 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %CARDCLIENT-2-REG: Sent
2019May 16 01:35:54 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %CARDCLIENT-2-SSE: LC_READY sent
2019May 16 01:36:18 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %CARDCLIENT-2-SSE: MOD:3 SUP ONLINE
```

- Step 5** After the supervisor 3E module is online, the configurations are copied to the supervisor 3E module.

Sup2E syslogs

```
<Thu May 16 01:36:43 2019> Standby Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) has come online, configs
will be copied
<Thu May 16 01:36:43 2019> Saving configuration now. Please wait ...
[#####] 100%
Copy complete.
/mnt/plog/migration_cli.log: 3.35 kB 85.81 kB/s
```

- Step 6** System switchover is then initiated. This process moves the supervisor 3E module from the HA-standby mode to Active mode. The SSH/telnet session is disconnected during the switchover. You have to then reconnect to the SSH/telnet session. Also, ensure that the console link and the management link is connected to the newly inserted supervisor-3E module.

Sup2E syslogs

```
<Thu May 16 01:37:26 2019> Supervisor-2 (N77-SUP2E) will switchover to
Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) now
<Thu May 16 01:37:26 2019> Switchover is successful, Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E)
is now active
Switch(config)#
User Access Verification
Switch login:
```

Sup3E syslogs

```
Switch(standby)# 2019May 16 01:37:26 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %KERN-2-SYSTEM_MSG: [
553.259393] Switchover started by redundancy driver - kernel
```

Case 1: Dual Supervisor Migration

```
2019May 16 01:37:26 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %SYSMGR-2-HASWITCHOVER_PRE_START: This
supervisor is becoming active (pre-start phase).
2019May 16 01:37:27 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %SYSMGR-2-SWITCHOVER_OVER: Switchover
completed.
```

Step 7 After the switchover to the supervisor 3E module is completed, the boot parameters are set for the supervisor migration process. Do not set any configuration parameters until the boot parameters are set. After the boot parameters are set, the migration process is complete. Use the **show boot** command to display the current boot variables and the **show module** command to display the modules installed in the switch.

Sup3E syslogs

```
2019May 16 01:37:39 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %BOOTVAR-2-SUP3_MIGRATION_CONFIG_STARTED:
Setting boot parameters for supervisor migration process, it might take some
time. Please do not replace Supervisor-2 (N77-SUP2E) in standby slot with
Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) and set any config parameters until migration is
complete.
Switch# 2019Apr 23 00:18:53 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %BOOTVAR-2-SUP3_MIGRATION_
COMPLETE: Migration process is complete now. Supervisor-2 (N77-SUP2E) in standby
slot can now be replaced with Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E).
Switch# show boot
Current Boot Variables:
sup-1
kickstart variable = bootflash:/n7700-s3-kickstart.8.4.1.bin
system variable = bootflash:/n7700-s3-dk9.8.4.1.bin
Boot POAP Disabled
sup-2
kickstart variable = bootflash:/n7700-s3-kickstart.8.4.1.bin
system variable = bootflash:/n7700-s3-dk9.8.4.1.bin
Boot POAP Disabled
Boot Variables on next reload:
sup-1
kickstart variable = bootflash:/n7700-s3-kickstart.8.4.1.bin
system variable = bootflash:/n7700-s3-dk9.8.4.1.bin
Boot POAP Disabled
sup-2
kickstart variable = bootflash:/n7700-s3-kickstart.8.4.1.bin
system variable = bootflash:/n7700-s3-dk9.8.4.1.bin
Boot POAP Disabled
Cisco Nexus Operating System (NX-OS) Software
TAC support: http://www.cisco.com/tac
Copyright (c) 2002-2019, Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
The copyrights to certain works contained in this software are
owned by other third parties and used and distributed under
license. Certain components of this software are licensed under
the GNU General Public License (GPL) version 2.0 or the GNU
Lesser General Public License (LGPL) Version 2.1. A copy of each
such license is available at
http://www.opensource.org/licenses/gpl-2.0.php and
http://www.opensource.org/licenses/lgpl-2.1.php
Switch# show module
Mod Ports Module-Type Model Status
-----
1 48 1/10 Gbps Ethernet Module N77-F348XP-23 ok
2 30 10/25/40/100 Gbps Ethernet Module N77-F430CQ-36 ok
3 0 Supervisor Module-3 N77-SUP3E active*
4 0 Supervisor Module-2 N77-SUP2E powered-dn
5 30 10/25/40/100 Gbps Ethernet Module N77-F430CQ-36 ok
6 30 10/25/40/100 Gbps Ethernet Module N77-F430CQ-36 ok
Mod Power-Status Reason
---
3 powered-dn Reset (powered-down) because of incompatible configuration
```

After the supervisor 3E module has been moved to Active mode, non-disruptive migration from supervisor 2E modules to supervisor 3E modules is completed. A console message, SUP3_MIGRATION_COMPLETE, is then displayed.

- Step 8** You can now power down and remove the other supervisor 2E module, and replace it with a Supervisor 3E module. This supervisor 3E module will come up in HA-standby mode.

Case 2: Single Supervisor Migration

To perform non-disruptive migration from Supervisor 2E modules to Supervisor 3E modules in a switch that has only the active supervisor module installed and there is no standby supervisor module, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Copy the Cisco NX-OS Release 8.4(1) kickstart and system images to the active supervisor module bootflash, using an FTP or TFTP server.

```
switch# copy tftp://tftpserver.cisco.com/n7700/n7700-s3-kickstart.8.4.1.bin bootflash:n7700-s3-kickstart.8.4.1.bin
switch# copy tftp://tftpserver.cisco.com/n7700/n7700-s3-dk9.8.4.1.bin bootflash:system n7700-s3-dk9.8.4.1.bin
```

- Step 2** Use the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command in config mode to initiate the migration process. This command triggers image version compatibility checks before initiating the migration process to ensure that the image being used is compatible with the supervisor 3E module.

- A message then appears on the console asking for confirmation to continue the migration procedure. Type **Yes** on the console prompt to continue with the migration procedure.
- Configuration commands are now blocked.
- The **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command will then check if it has to initiate a single supervisor or dual supervisor migration process by checking if there is a standby supervisor 2E module installed in the switch. In this procedure, the switch does not have a standby supervisor module.
- You can use the **show module** command to display the modules installed in the switch.

Sup2E syslogs

```
switch# show module
Mod Ports Module-Type           Model           Status
---  ---  -
1   48   1/10 Gbps Ethernet Module  N77-F348XP-23  ok
2   30   10/25/40/100 Gbps Ethernet Module N77-F430CQ-36  ok
4   0    Supervisor Module-2        N77-SUP2E      active*
5   30   10/25/40/100 Gbps Ethernet Module  N77-F430CQ-36  ok
6   30   10/25/40/100 Gbps Ethernet Module  N77-F430CQ-36  ok

switch(config)# migrate sup kickstart n7700-s3-kickstart.8.4.1.bin system n7700-s3-dk9.8.4.1.bin
<Thu May 16 01:10:09 2019> Standby Supervisor-2 is not present in slot 3, continuing with migration ...
<Thu May 16 01:10:09 2019> This will start the Supervisor-2 to Supervisor-3 migration. Configuration will be locked until migration is complete.
Do you wish to continue (y/n) [n] y
<Thu May 16 01:10:09 2019> Starting migration, Please do not remove any linecards or fabric cards until migration is complete
```

Step 3 Insert the supervisor 3E module in the other switch supervisor slot, as explained in the [Installing or Replacing a Supervisor Module](#) section. When the supervisor 3E module is detected in the standby supervisor slot, a netboot is initiated with the image that is provided by using the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command.

- Note**
- You have to insert the supervisor 3E module into the switch within a period of 30 minutes after using the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command. In case you have not inserted the supervisor 3E module within 30 minutes after using this command, migration is aborted and you have to use the command again to reinitiate the migration process.
 - After the supervisor 3E module is inserted in the slot, a timeout of 45 minutes is triggered for the supervisor 3E module to power up and come online. If the supervisor 3E module fails to power up and come online at the first attempt, a retry is initiated every 15 minutes. In case the supervisor 3E module fails to come online after 3 retries or 45 minutes, you have to remove the supervisor 3E module and restart the migration process by using the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command.

Sup2E syslogs

```
<Thu May 16 01:10:11 2019> Manual-boot is enabled for Standby Supervisor
<Thu May 16 01:10:09 2019> Please insert Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) in slot number : 3 within 30 minutes
```

Step 4 Wait for the supervisor 3E module to come up in HA-standby mode. After the new supervisor 3E module is detected by the switch, it may take up to 15 minutes for the supervisor 3E module to come online.

Sup2E syslogs

```
2019 May 16 01:10:19 Switch-m3 %$ VDC-3 %$ %PLATFORM-2-MOD_DETECT: Module 3 detected
(Serial number :unavailable) Module-Type Supervisor Module-3 Model :unavailable 2019
May 16 01:10:19 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %PLATFORM-2-MODULE_EJECTOR_POLICY_ENABLED:
All Ejectors closed for module 3. Ejector based shutdown enabled
2019 May 16 01:10:19 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %PLATFORM-2-MOD_DETECT: Module 3 detected
(Serial number :unavailable) Module-Type Supervisor Module-3 Model :unavailable
<Thu May 16 01:10:21 2019> Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) is detected in slot 3
<Thu May 16 01:10:21 2019> Reloading standby. This might take up to 15 minutes.
Please wait ...
```

Sup3E syslogs

```
System is coming up ... Please wait ...
System is coming up ... Please wait ...
Switch(standby) login: 2019May 16 01:32:56 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %USBHSD-2-MOUNT:
logflash: online
adminbackup
Switch(standby)# 2019May 16 01:35:37 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %CARDCLIENT-2-REG: Sent
2019May 16 01:35:54 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %CARDCLIENT-2-SSE: LC_READY sent
2019May 16 01:36:18 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %CARDCLIENT-2-SSE: MOD:3 SUP ONLINE
```

Step 5 After the supervisor 3E module is online, the configurations are copied to the supervisor 3E module.

Sup2E syslogs

```
<Thu May 16 01:36:43 2019> Standby Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) has come online, configs
will be copied
<Thu May 16 01:36:43 2019> Saving configuration now. Please wait ...
[#####] 100%
Copy complete.
/mnt/plog/migration_cli.log: 3.35 kB 85.81 kB/s
```

- Step 6** System switchover is then initiated. This process moves the supervisor 3E module from the HA-standby mode to Active mode. The SSH/telnet session is disconnected during the switchover. You have to then reconnect to the SSH/telnet session. Also, ensure that the console link and the management link is connected to the newly inserted supervisor-3E module.

Sup2E syslogs

```
<Thu May 16 01:37:26 2019> Supervisor-2 (N77-SUP2E) will switchover to Supervisor-3
(N77-SUP3E) now
<Thu May 16 01:37:26 2019> Switchover is successful, Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) is
now active
Switch(config)#
User Access Verification
Switch login:
```

Sup3E syslogs

```
Switch(standby)# 2019May 16 01:37:26 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %KERN-2-SYSTEM_MSG: [
553.259393] Switchover started by redundancy driver - kernel
2019May 16 01:37:26 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %SYSMGR-2-HASWITCHOVER_PRE_START: This
supervisor is becoming active (pre-start phase).
2019May 16 01:37:26 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %SYSMGR-2-HASWITCHOVER_START: Supervisor 3 is
becoming active.
2019May 16 01:37:27 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %SYSMGR-2-SWITCHOVER_OVER: Switchover
completed.
```

- Step 7** After the switchover to the supervisor 3E module is completed, the boot parameters are set for the supervisor migration process. Do not set any configuration parameters until the boot parameters are set. After the boot parameters are set, the migration process is complete. Use the **show boot** command to display the current boot variables and the **show module** command to display the modules installed in the switch.

Sup3E syslogs

```
2019May 16 01:37:39 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %BOOTVAR-2-SUP3_MIGRATION_CONFIG_STARTED:
Setting boot parameters for supervisor migration process, it might take some time.
Please do not replace Supervisor-2 (N77-SUP2E) in standby slot with Supervisor-3
(N77-SUP3E) and set any config parameters until migration is complete.
Switch# 2019Apr 23 00:18:53 Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %BOOTVAR-2-SUP3_MIGRATION_
COMPLETE: Migration process is complete now. Supervisor-2 (N77-SUP2E) in standby slot
can now be replaced with Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E).
Switch# show boot
Current Boot Variables:
sup-1
kickstart variable = bootflash:/n7700-s3-kickstart.8.4.1.bin system variable =
bootflash:/n7700-s3-dk9.8.4.1.bin
Boot POAP Disabled
sup-2
kickstart variable = bootflash:/n7700-s3-kickstart.8.4.1.bin system variable =
bootflash:/n7700-s3-dk9.8.4.1.bin
Boot POAP Disabled
Boot Variables on next reload:
sup-1
kickstart variable = bootflash:/n7700-s3-kickstart.8.4.1.bin
system variable = bootflash:/n7700-s3-dk9.8.4.1.bin
Boot POAP Disabled
sup-2
kickstart variable = bootflash:/n7700-s3-kickstart.8.4.1.bin
system variable = bootflash:/n7700-s3-dk9.8.4.1.bin
Boot POAP Disabled
Cisco Nexus Operating System (NX-OS) Software
TAC support: http://www.cisco.com/tac
Copyright (c) 2002-2019, Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
The copyrights to certain works contained in this software are
owned by other third parties and used and distributed under
license. Certain components of this software are licensed under
the GNU General Public License (GPL) version 2.0 or the GNU
```

Viewing Migration Status

Lesser General Public License (LGPL) Version 2.1. A copy of each such license is available at
<http://www.opensource.org/licenses/gpl-2.0.php> and
<http://www.opensource.org/licenses/lgpl-2.1.php>

Switch# show module

Mod	Ports	Module-Type	Model	Status
1	48	1/10 Gbps Ethernet Module	N77-F348XP-23	ok
2	30	10/25/40/100 Gbps Ethernet Module	N77-F430CQ-36	ok
3	0	Supervisor Module-3	N77-SUP3E	active*
4	0	Supervisor Module-2	N77-SUP2E	powered-dn
5	30	10/25/40/100 Gbps Ethernet Module	N77-F430CQ-36	ok
6	30	10/25/40/100 Gbps Ethernet Module	N77-F430CQ-36	ok

Mod Power-Status Reason

3 powered-dn Reset (powered-down) because of incompatible configuration

After the supervisor 3E module has been moved to Active mode, non-disruptive migration from supervisor 2E modules to supervisor 3E modules is completed. A console message, SUP3_MIGRATION_COMPLETE, is then displayed.

Viewing Migration Status

Use the **show logging onboard migration status** command on any management session to display the status of migration. You can use this command during migration or after migration is complete.

The sample output when this command is used on the supervisor-3E module is as given below. This output has both the supervisor-3E and the supervisor-2E logs.

```
switch# show logging onboard migration status
<Sat May 25 01:58:22 2019> =====
<Sat May 25 01:58:22 2019> Starting Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) migration logging
<Sat May 25 01:58:22 2019> =====
<Sat May 25 01:58:22 2019> Migrate file is created
<Sat May 25 01:58:22 2019> Migration in progress, scratchpad register : 0xfe
and boot_type : 1
<Sat May 25 01:58:22 2019> Written 0xed post migration file creation
<Sat May 25 01:58:22 2019> Post write, read scratchpad_b register 0xed
<Sat May 25 02:05:00 2019> Copying the everland migration log from tmp to plog
succeeded
<Sat May 25 02:05:14 2019> bootvar_handle_mts_msg: migration in progress - 1
<Sat May 25 02:05:14 2019>
bootvar_copy_cfg_for_migration:sup_migration_procjob_hdl : 0
<Sat May 25 02:05:14 2019> bootvar_copy_cfg_for_migration:forking procjob for
copy r s
<Sat May 25 02:05:15 2019> Standby arbiter link of F4 card in slot 6 has been
changed to 12G
<Sat May 25 02:05:15 2019> Standby arbiter link is currently 12G for F4
module : 6
<Sat May 25 02:05:15 2019> bootvar_copy_cfg_proc: sup migration configuration
started
<Sat May 25 02:05:15 2019> bootvar_copy_cfg_proc:isan_img :bootflash:/n7700-
s3-dk9.8.4.1.gbin ks_img :bootflash:/n7700-s3-kickstart.8.4.1.gbin
<Sat May 25 02:05:18 2019> bootvar_copy_cfg_proc: Kickstart cfg - /isan/bin/
vsh -c "configure terminal ; boot kickstart bootflash:/n7700-s3-
kickstart.8.4.1.gbin "
<Sat May 25 02:05:23 2019> bootvar_copy_cfg_proc: System cfg - /isan/bin/vsh -
c "configure terminal ; boot system bootflash:/n7700-s3-dk9.8.4.1.gbin " <Sat
May 25 02:09:03 2019> bootvar_copy_cfg_proc:command for copy r s -
/isan/bin/vsh -c "copy running-config startup-config vdc-all"
<Sat May 25 02:09:18 2019> procjobcb_job_done: Controller PID : 14342,
```

```

sup_migration_procjob_hdl : 14342
<Sat May 25 02:09:18 2019> procjobcb_job_done: sup2_sup3_migration in progress
<Sat May 25 02:09:18 2019> procjobcb_job_done:bootvar config successfully
updated after migration
<Sat May 25 02:09:18 2019> procjobcb_job_done:created migration file
sup2_sup3_migration_standby
<Sat May 25 02:23:28 2019> Read scratchpad_b register 0x96
<Sat May 25 02:31:14 2019> bootvar_handle_mts_msg: migration in progress - 0
<Sat May 25 02:31:30 2019> bootvar_handle_mts_msg: migration in progress - 0
<Sat May 25 02:31:50 2019> bootvar_handle_mts_msg: migration in progress - 0
<Sat May 25 01:55:07 2019> =====
<Sat May 25 01:55:07 2019> Starting Supervisor-2 (N77-SUP2E) migration logging
<Sat May 25 01:55:07 2019> =====
<Sat May 25 01:55:07 2019> System redundancy status data is dumped
successfully <Sat May 25 01:55:07 2019> Active EOBC link is used, continue
migration
<Sat May 25 01:55:07 2019> Deleted EOBC file
/nxos/tmp/eobc_redundant_link_migration.txt successfully
<Sat May 25 01:55:07 2019> Kickstart image file is /bootflash/k3_fin
<Sat May 25 01:55:07 2019> System image file is /bootflash/s3_fin
<Sat May 25 01:55:07 2019> Standby Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) is not preinserted
before starting migration
<Sat May 25 01:55:08 2019> Migration is started by the user
<Sat May 25 01:55:08 2019> system standby manual-boot is invoked and waiting
for Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) to get inserted
<Sat May 25 01:55:08 2019> Migrate file is created
<Sat May 25 01:55:08 2019> Migrate file is created at tftp location
<Sat May 25 01:55:08 2019> F4 arbiter link for standby SUP is : 24
<Sat May 25 01:55:09 2019> Standby arbiter link of F4 card in slot 6 has been
changed to 12G
Viewing Migration Status
<Sat May 25 01:55:09 2019> Standby arbiter link is currently 12G for F4
module : 6
<Sat May 25 01:55:09 2019> Count : 1, Reloading standby
<Sat May 25 01:55:09 2019> subop: 21 Power-management write for migration for
module 3 SUCCESS
<Sat May 25 01:55:09 2019> subop: 21 Power-management read for migration for
module 3 SUCCESS
<Sat May 25 01:55:09 2019> Power-management written value : 0xfe, read_value:
0xfe
<Sat May 25 01:55:09 2019> Waiting for standby Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) to
come online
<Sat May 25 01:55:27 2019> subop: 20 Power-management write for migration for
module 3 SUCCESS
<Sat May 25 01:55:27 2019> subop: 20 Power-management read for migration for
module 3 SUCCESS
<Sat May 25 01:55:27 2019> Power-management written value : 0xfe, read_value:
0xfe
<Sat May 25 01:55:28 2019> subop: 21 Power-management write for migration for
module 3 SUCCESS
<Sat May 25 01:55:28 2019> subop: 21 Power-management read for migration for
module 3 SUCCESS
<Sat May 25 01:55:28 2019> Power-management written value : 0xfe, read_value:
0xfe
<Sat May 25 02:02:04 2019> subop: 20 Power-management write for migration for
module 3 SUCCESS
<Sat May 25 02:02:04 2019> subop: 20 Power-management read for migration for
module 3 SUCCESS
<Sat May 25 02:02:04 2019> Power-management written value : 0xfe, read_value:
0xfe
<Sat May 25 02:04:09 2019> Standby has come online !!!
<Sat May 25 02:04:30 2019> ALL_AUTOGRANTS set to 1
<Sat May 25 02:04:30 2019> Standbyfabricloopback test succeeded
<Sat May 25 02:04:30 2019> Standby ready for Switchover, deleting

```

```

'/nxos/tmp/migration_log.txt'
<Sat May 25 02:04:30 2019> Saving configuration now
<Sat May 25 02:04:59 2019> Deletion of migration file is successful in
Supervisor-2 (N77-SUP2E)
<Sat May 25 02:04:59 2019> Deletion of tftp migration file is successful in
Supervisor-2 (N77-SUP2E)
<Sat May 25 02:04:59 2019> Copying log file to Standby....
<Sat May 25 02:04:59 2019> Command executed for transferring logfile to other
SUP - ncftpput -u ftpuser -p nbv123 127.1.1.3 /nxos/tmp/
/mnt/plog/migration.log

```

The sample output when this command is used on the supervisor-2E module is as given below. This output has the supervisor-2E logs only.

```

switch# show logging onboard migration status
<Sat May 25 01:55:07 2019> =====
<Sat May 25 01:55:07 2019> Starting Supervisor-2 (N77-SUP2E) migration logging
<Sat May 25 01:55:07 2019> =====
<Sat May 25 01:55:07 2019> System redundancy status data is dumped
successfully <Sat May 25 01:55:07 2019> Active EOBC link is used, continue
migration
<Sat May 25 01:55:07 2019> Deleted EOBC file
/nxos/tmp/eobc_redundant_link_migration.txt successfully
<Sat May 25 01:55:07 2019> Kickstart image file is /bootflash/k3_fin
<Sat May 25 01:55:07 2019> System image file is /bootflash/s3_fin
<Sat May 25 01:55:07 2019> Standby Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) is not pre-inserted
before starting migration
<Sat May 25 01:55:08 2019> Migration is started by the user
<Sat May 25 01:55:08 2019> system standby manual-boot is invoked and waiting
for Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) to get inserted
<Sat May 25 01:55:08 2019> Migrate file is created
<Sat May 25 01:55:08 2019> Migrate file is created at tftp location
<Sat May 25 01:55:08 2019> F4 arbiter link for standby SUP is : 24
<Sat May 25 01:55:09 2019> Standby arbiter link of F4 card in slot 6 has been
changed to 12G
<Sat May 25 01:55:09 2019> Standby arbiter link is currently 12G for F4
module : 6
<Sat May 25 01:55:09 2019> Count : 1, Reloading standby
<Sat May 25 01:55:09 2019> subop: 21 Power-management write for migration for
module 3 SUCCESS
<Sat May 25 01:55:09 2019> subop: 21 Power-management read for migration for
module 3 SUCCESS
<Sat May 25 01:55:09 2019> Power-management written value : 0xfe, read_value:
0xfe
<Sat May 25 01:55:09 2019> Waiting for standby Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) to come
online
<Sat May 25 01:55:27 2019> subop: 20 Power-management write for migration for
module 3 SUCCESS
<Sat May 25 01:55:27 2019> subop: 20 Power-management read for migration for
module 3 SUCCESS
<Sat May 25 01:55:27 2019> Power-management written value : 0xfe, read_value:
0xfe
<Sat May 25 01:55:28 2019> subop: 21 Power-management write for migration for
module 3 SUCCESS
<Sat May 25 01:55:28 2019> subop: 21 Power-management read for migration for
module 3 SUCCESS
<Sat May 25 01:55:28 2019> Power-management written value : 0xfe, read_value:
0xfe
<Sat May 25 02:02:04 2019> subop: 20 Power-management write for migration for
module 3 SUCCESS
<Sat May 25 02:02:04 2019> subop: 20 Power-management read for migration for
module 3 SUCCESS
<Sat May 25 02:02:04 2019> Power-management written value : 0xfe, read_value:
0xfe

```



```

<Sat May 25 02:04:09 2019> Standby has come online !!!
<Sat May 25 02:04:30 2019> ALL_AUTOGRANTS set to 1
<Sat May 25 02:04:30 2019> Standbyfabricloopback test succeeded
<Sat May 25 02:04:30 2019> Standby ready for Switchover, deleting
'/nxos/tmp/migration_log.txt'
<Sat May 25 02:04:30 2019> Saving configuration now
<Sat May 25 02:04:59 2019> Deletion of migration file is successful in
Supervisor-2 (N77-SUP2E)
<Sat May 25 02:04:59 2019> Deletion of tftp migration file is successful in
Supervisor-2 (N77-SUP2E)
<Sat May 25 02:04:59 2019> Copying log file to Standby....
<Sat May 25 02:04:59 2019> Command executed for transferring logfile to other
SUP - ncftpput -u ftpuser -p nbv123 127.1.1.3 /nxos/tmp/
/mnt/plog/migration.log

```

Troubleshooting

This sections lists the error messages that may come up on the console during the migration along with the recommended action to be performed.

- **Problem**

The kickstart or system image is not present on the bootflash of the active supervisor-3E module. The following syslog message is displayed:

```

switch# <Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %BOOTVAR-2-
SUP3_MIGRATION_IMAGE_DOES_NOT_EXIST: <Kickstart/System> image doesn't exist on
bootflash of the active Supervisor-3. Please clear some space in bootflash, copy
the Supervisor-3 images manually, set the boot variables and save configs before
replacing Standby Supervisor-2

```

Action to be performed

Clear space on the bootflash and then copy the supervisor-3E module images manually, as shown in Step 1 in the migration procedures given above. Set the boot variables and save the configuration before replacing the standby Supervisor-2E module. Use the **boot kickstart** *<kickstart_image>* and the **boot system** *<system_image>* on the active supervisor 3E module when it becomes active after the migration has been completed.

- **Problem**

The newly inserted supervisor-3E module cannot take over as the active supervisor. The following syslog message is displayed:

```

<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) cannot take over as
active Supervisor ...

```

Action to be performed

Wait for the next retry attempt by the switch to bring up the supervisor-3E module.

- **Problem**

The migration logging file is already present in the supervisor-2E module. The following syslog message is displayed:

```

<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> WARNING!!! Migration logging file already exists in
Supervisor-2 (N77-SUP2E), continuing migration ...

```

Action to be performed

None. The **show logging onboard migration status** command is used to monitor the migration progress. There is no impact on the migration process.

- **Problem**

Unable to release the configuration lock that was set to prevent any configuration changes before switching over to the supervisor-3E module. The following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Failed to release config lock before switching over to Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E), aborting migration ...
```

Action to be performed

Use the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command again.

- **Problem**

The switch cannot initiate migration logging due to internal errors. The following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> WARNING!!! Migration logging cannot be done due to Internal Error, continuing migration ...
```

Action to be performed

None. The **show logging onboard migration status** command is used to monitor the migration progress. There is no impact on the migration process.

- **Problem**

The switch cannot initiate migration logging due to insufficient file permissions. The following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> WARNING!!! Migration logging cannot be done due to file permission error, continuing migration ...
```

Action to be performed

None. The **show logging onboard migration status** command is used to monitor the migration progress. This error message is displayed if the appropriate file permissions have not been provided.

- **Problem**

The active supervisor-2E module is using the redundant secondary EOBC link instead of the primary EOBC link. The following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Active Supervisor-2 (N77-SUP2E) is using Redundant EOBC link, this indicates some problem with Primary EOBC link, aborting migration ...
```

Action to be performed

Replace the active supervisor-2E module with another supervisor-2E module.

- **Problem**

Unable to extract the image header from the kickstart or system images. The following syslog messages are displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Image header extraction failed for Kickstart image <kickstart_image> of Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E), aborting migration ...
```

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Image header extraction failed for System image <system_image> of Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E), aborting migration ...
```

Action to be performed

Use the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command again.

- **Problem**

Unable to retrieve the kickstart or system image information. The following syslogs are displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Failed to get Kickstart image info,
aborting migration ...
```

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Failed to get System image info, aborting
migration ...
```

- **Action to be performed**

Use the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command again.

- **Problem**

The kickstart or system images provided are not valid images for the supervisor-3E modules. The following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Kickstart image provided '<kickstart_image>'
is not a valid Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) image, aborting migration ...
```

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! System image provided '<system_image>' is
not a valid Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) image, aborting migration ...
```

- **Action to be performed**

Use a valid Supervisor 3E image and use the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command again.

- **Problem**

The release versions of the supervisor-3E kickstart and system images provided are not the same as the existing supervisor-2E kickstart and system images. The following syslog messages are displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Running kickstart version :
<running_version>,
version of kickstart image provided : <Supervisor-3_image_version>
```

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Version of kickstart image provided
('<sup3_image_version>') does not match running version, aborting migration
...
```

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Running System version:
<running_version>, version of system image provided : <Supervisor-
3_image_version>
```

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Version of system image provided
('<sup3_image_version>') does not match running version, aborting migration
...
```

- **Action to be performed**

Check the image version. The release versions of the supervisor-3E kickstart and system images provided should be the same as the existing supervisor-2E kickstart and system images.

- **Problem**

Unable to retrieve the chassis information. The following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Chassis information retrieve failed,
aborting migration ...
```

- **Action to be performed**

Use the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command again.

- **Problem**

Unable to retrieve the slot number of the supervisor module. The following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Supervisor slot information retrieve
failed, aborting migration ...
```

- **Action to be performed**

Use the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command again.

- **Problem**

Unable to retrieve the slot number of the standby supervisor module. The following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Standby Supervisor slot information
retrieve failed, aborting migration ...
```

- **Action to be performed**

Use the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command again.

- **Problem**

The Cisco Nexus 7702 switch does not support nondisruptive migration from the supervisor-2E module to a supervisor-3E module. In case the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command is used on a Cisco Nexus 7702 switch, the following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Migration is not supported in N7702
chassis, aborting migration ...
```

- **Action to be performed**

None. The **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command is not supported on a Cisco Nexus 7702 switch.

- **Problem**

In case the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command cannot read the stored Supervisor 2E image links, the migration process fails. The following syslog messages are displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Kickstart image link for Active
Supervisor-2 (N77-SUP2E) could not be found, aborting migration ...
```

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> Please set the boot parameters using 'boot kickstart
<kickstart_image>' and 'boot system <system_image>'
```

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! System image link for Active Supervisor-2
(N77- SUP2E) could not be found, aborting migration ...
```

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> Please set the boot parameters using 'boot kickstart
<kickstart_image>' and 'boot system <system_image>'
```

- **Action to be performed**

Set the supervisor 2E image links using the **boot kickstart** *<kickstart_image>* command and the **boot system** *<system_image>* command before re-inserting the standby supervisor 2E module.

- **Problem**

The supervisor-3E module is already present in the standby slot before initiating the migration procedure. The following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Supervisor-3 is already inserted in standby slot <slot_number> before starting migration. Please remove Standby supervisor and start single Supervisor migration, aborting migration ...
```

Action to be performed

Remove the standby supervisor-3E module and start the migration process again.

• Problem

Unable to retrieve VDC information. The following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Failed to retrieve vdc information, aborting migration ...
```

Action to be performed

Restart the migration procedure.

• Problem

The standby supervisor-2E module is not in the HA-standby state. The following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Standby Supervisor-2 (N77-SUP2E) is not yet in ha-standby state, aborting migration ...
```

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> Please wait for Standby supervisor in slot <slot_number> to become ha-standby or physically remove standby and start migration
```

Action to be performed

Wait till the standby supervisor 2E module comes up in the HA-standby state or remove the standby supervisor 2E module and perform single supervisor migration.

• Problem

Problem In case of dual supervisor migration, the standby supervisor-2E module is powered down by using the **out-of-service** *<slot-number>* command. If the standby supervisor-2E module does not power down after using this command, the following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Failed to power down Standby Supervisor-2 in slot <slot_number>, aborting migration ...
```

Action to be performed

Use the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command again.

• Problem

Unable to lock the configuration. The following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Failed to lock config, aborting migration ...
```

Action to be performed

Use the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command again.

• Problem

In case auto-boot is not disabled before the insertion of the supervisor-3E module, the following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Standby Supervisor config failed, aborting migration ...
```

Action to be performed

Use the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command again.

• Problem

After powering down the supervisor-2E module, the switch will check for the presence of a module in the slot from which the supervisor-2E module was removed. This check happens every 30 minutes after the supervisor-2E module has been removed. In case this check to detect the presence of the supervisor module fails, the following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Module information retrieve failed
```

Action to be performed

None. There is no impact on the migration process.

• Problem

A supervisor-2E module is inserted instead of a supervisor-3E module. The following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Supervisor-2 (N77-SUP2E) is inserted in slot
<slot_number> instead of Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E), aborting migration ...
```

Action to be performed

Ensure that the newly inserted supervisor module is the supervisor-3E module.

• Problem

In case the supervisor-3E module is not inserted into the standby slot within 30 minutes after the supervisor 2E module has been powered down, the following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Timeout waiting for Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E)
to be inserted in slot <slot_number>, aborting migration ...
```

Action to be performed

Use the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command again and ensure that the supervisor 3E module is inserted into the standby slot within 30 minutes after the supervisor 2E module has been powered down.

• Problem

Unable to create image links for the supervisor-3E module images. The following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) image links could
not be created for Standby Supervisor-3 bootup, aborting migration ...
```

Action to be performed

Use the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command again.

• Problem

After the supervisor-3E module is detected, the arbiter links of the F4-series I/O modules are changed to 12G as the supervisor-3E module supports a speed of 12G compared to 4G in the supervisor-2E module. This change has to be done for all F4-series I/O modules present in the switch. In case of failure in changing to the 12G link for any F4-series I/O module, 3 retry attempts are initiated. After all the attempts to change the arbiter links fail, ensure that the standby supervisor arbiter link for all F4-series I/O modules are set to 4G. In case the standby supervisor arbiter link for all F4-series I/O modules are

not set to 4G, the standby supervisor-2E module will not come up if a supervisor-2E module is inserted instead of the supervisor-3E module after migration failure.

The following syslog messages are displayed in case of failure in changing the standby supervisor arbiter links for the F4-series I/O modules:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Failed to change Standby Supervisor  
arbiter link for F4 linecard in slot <F4_linecard_slot>
```

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Failed to change Standby Supervisor  
arbiter link for F4 linecard in slot <F4_linecard_slot> even after 3  
retries, aborting migration ...
```

Action to be performed

Please contact TAC for assistance.

• Problem

Unable to reload the supervisor-3E module after the supervisor-3E module is detected in the switch. The following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Failed to reload Standby Supervisor-3  
(N77-SUP3E), aborting migration ...
```

Action to be performed

Use the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command again.

• Problem

The supervisor-3E module is stuck in loader prompt due to a boot failure. The following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Standby Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) is stuck  
in loader prompt due to boot-up failure ...
```

Action to be performed

None. A retry attempt to bring up the supervisor-3E module is initiated by the switch every 15 minutes.

• Problem

The supervisor-3E module is unable to come online. The following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Standby Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) could not  
come online ...
```

Action to be performed

None. A retry attempt to bring up the supervisor-3E module is initiated by the switch every 15 minutes.

• Problem

The supervisor module fails to come online. The following syslogs are displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Timeout waiting for Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP2E)  
to come online, aborting migration ...
```

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> Powering down Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E) in slot  
<slot_number>
```

Action to be performed

Use the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command again and ensure that the supervisor-3E module is inserted in the standby slot within 30 minutes after the supervisor-2E module is powered down.

- **Problem**

The supervisor-2E image links are not restored on the active supervisor-2E module before the switchover to supervisor-3E is initiated. The following syslogs are displayed before saving configuration:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> WARNING!!! Error resetting original Supervisor-2
(N77- SUP2E) image links, continuing migration ...
```

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> WARNING!!! Please set the boot variables manually
before inserting back Supervisor-2 (N77-SUP2E) in standby slot <slot_number>,
continuing migration ...
```

Action to be performed

Use the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command again.

- **Problem**

The **copy r s vdc-all** command fails on the active supervisor-2E module before the switchover to the supervisor-3E module is initiated. The following syslog is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR!!! Failed to save configuration,
aborting migration ...
```

Action to be performed

Use the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command again.

- **Problem**

The switchover fails on the active supervisor-2E module before the switchover to the supervisor-3E module is initiated. The following syslog is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR !! Switchover failed, aborting
migration ...
```

Action to be performed

Use the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command again.

- **Problem**

In case the supervisor-3E module is not inserted within 30 minutes after using the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command, the switch will try to power up the powered-down supervisor-2E module in the standby slot on reaching the timeout of 30 minutes. If the standby supervisor-2E module fails to power up, the following syslog message is displayed before aborting migration:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> ERROR !!! Failed to power up Standby Supervisor-2,
Please power up manually using "no poweroff module <slot_num>" from config mode
```

Action to be performed

Use the **no poweroff module** *<slot-number>* command on the active supervisor 2E module to bring up the powered down standby supervisor 2E module in case the supervisor 3E module has not been inserted within 30 minutes after using the **migrate sup kickstart** *<sup3-kickstart-image>* **system** *<sup3-system-image>* command again.

- **Problem**

Once the supervisor-3E module is active after migration has been completed successfully, both the arbiter links of the F4- series I/O modules will be changed to 12G. After migration, in case the other link to the powered down supervisor-2E module is not automatically changed to 12G due to an error, the following syslog message is displayed:

```
Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %BOOTVAR-2-F4_LC_ARB_LINK_SET_FAIL: ERROR!!! Failed to change Standby Supervisor arbiter link for F4 linecard in slot <F4_linecard_slot>. Please run 'migrate clean' once migration process gets completed, but before replacing Supervisor-2 (N77-SUP2E) in standby slot.
```

Action to be performed

After migration has been completed, use the **migrate clean** command before replacing the supervisor-2E module in the standby slot.

• Problem

Setting of the boot variable parameters fails after migration when the supervisor-3E module becomes active. The following syslog is displayed:

```
Switch# <Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %BOOTVAR-2-SUP3_MIGRATION_CONFIG_ERROR: Setting boot parameters failed for Supervisor-3 (N77-SUP3E). Please set boot variables manually using 'boot kickstart <kickstart_image>' and 'boot system <system_image>' and save configs before replacing Standby Supervisor-2 (N77-SUP2E)
```

Action to be performed

Use the **boot kickstart <kickstart_image>** and the **boot system <system_image>** on the active supervisor 3E module when it becomes active after the migration has been completed.

Migration Clean Up

- In case any migration clean up errors have been detected on the supervisor-2E module, the following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> Please run 'migrate clean' before doing any operation.
```

In such a scenario, use the **migrate clean** command to resolve the errors.

```
switch# migrate clean
<Tue May 28 03:34:58 2019> Manual-boot is disabled for Standby Supervisor
<Tue May 28 03:34:58 2019> Migration clean up done
```

- In case the standby supervisor-3E's arbiter link for the F4 module is not changed, the following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %BOOTVAR-2-F4_LC_ARB_LINK_SET_FAIL: ERROR!!! Failed to change Standby Supervisor arbiter link for F4 linecard in slot <F4_linecard_slot>. Please run 'migrate clean' once migration process gets completed, but before replacing Supervisor-2 (N77-SUP2E) in standby slot.
```

In such a scenario, use the **migrate clean** command to retry changing the arbiter link.

- In case any migration clean up errors have been detected on the supervisor-3E module, the following syslog message is displayed:

```
<Tue Apr 30 10:02:47 2019> Switch %$ VDC-1 %$ %BOOTVAR-2-MIGRATION_CONFIG_CLEAN_ERROR: Please run 'migrate clean' command from active Supervisor before replacing the standby Supervisor.
```

In such a scenario, use the **migrate clean** command to resolve the errors.

```
switch# migrate clean
<Tue May 28 03:34:58 2019> Migration clean up done
```

- In case the **migrate clean** command is used on a supervisor-2E or a supervisor-3E module for which migration has not been initiated, the following syslog is displayed:

```
switch# migrate clean
<Tue May 28 03:34:58 2019> Migration was not done on this Supervisor
```

Installing or Replacing an I/O Module

Before you begin

- You must follow ESD protocols, including the following:
 - You must wear a grounded ESD wristband (or other personal grounding device) whenever you handle the electronic modules outside the grounded chassis.
 - You must carry electronic modules by only their covered edges or handles. Do not touch their electronic components.
 - Whenever a module is outside a grounded chassis, place it flat on an antistatic surface or in an antistatic bag. Never lean the module on anything nor place anything else on top of the module nor lean anything on the module.
- Verify that the chassis is grounded.
- Verify that you have the following tools and equipment:
 - Number 1 Phillips torque screwdriver



Note Manual torque screwdrivers are recommended. Be sure to never exceed the recommended torque setting for the screw that you are working with.

- Replacement or new I/O module



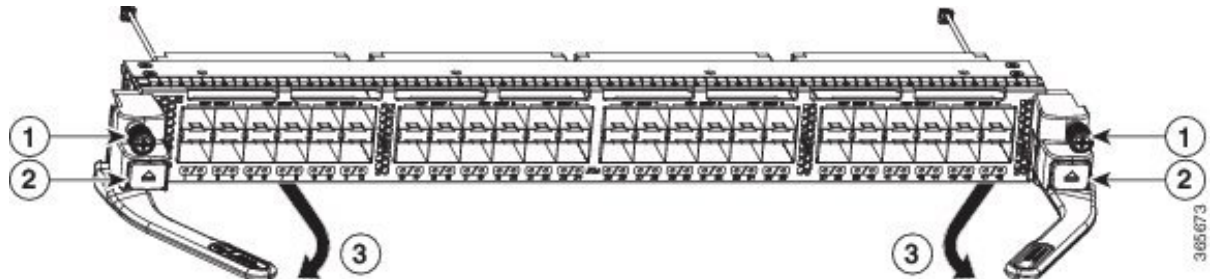
Note You can replace an I/O module with another I/O module while the switch is operational. To do this action, you must first remove an I/O module from the chassis, and then install a new or replacement I/O module in the newly vacated slot within a couple of minutes to maintain the designed airflow.

Step 1 Open a slot in the chassis for the new I/O module as follows:

- Note** If you need to remove a blank filler plate from the slot, unscrew the captive screws on either side of the module and pull the handle on the plate to remove it from the slot. Continue with Step 2.

- a) Disconnect all of the networking cables attached to the front of the I/O module to be removed.
- b) Unscrew the captive screw on each side of the module until the screws are loose and no longer connected to the chassis (see Callout 1 in the following figure).

Figure 26: Removing an I/O Module



1	Loosen the two captive screws	3	Two handles spring out part way from the front of the module
2	Press the two ejector buttons		

- c) Press the two ejector buttons on the each side of the module (see Callout 2 in the above figure).
The two handles spring out part way from the front of the module.
- d) Fully rotate the two handles away from the front of the module and pull on them to move the module part way out of its slot.
- e) Place one hand under the module to support its weight, grasp the front of the module with the other hand, pull the module fully out of its slot, and set the module on an antistatic surface.

Caution Do not touch any electrical circuitry on the removed I/O module. Handle the module only by its covered surfaces (front and bottom of the module) and always set the module on an antistatic surface when it is not inside the chassis.

Step 2 Install the new I/O module in the open slot as follows:

- a) Unpack the new I/O module, set it right side up on an antistatic surface (so that you can see the electrical components from above the module), and inspect the module for damage.

If anything is damaged, contact your customer representative immediately.

- b) Press the two eject buttons (one on each side of the module front) and rotate the handles away from the front of the module.
- c) Without touching any electronic circuitry, grasp the front of the I/O module with one hand, place your other hand under the module to support its weight, and lift the module to the slot.
- d) Align the back of the module to the guides inside the slot, and slide the module fully into the slot by pushing on the front of the module.

If you push the module fully into the slot, you seat it onto its connectors inside the slot and the handles move part way toward the front of the module. The front of the module should be 1/4 inch (0.6 cm) out of the slot.

- e) Simultaneously rotate each of the two handles to the front of the module until they click.
As you rotate the handles to the front of the module, the module should move fully into the slot.

- f) Verify that the front of the module is even with the fronts of the other installed I/O modules. If not, press both ejector buttons, pull on the handles to partly remove the module, and repeat Steps 2d and 2e to reseat the module in the slot.
- g) Screw in the two captive screws (one on each side of the module) to secure the module to the chassis. Tighten the screws to 8 in-lb (0.9 N·m) of torque.

The Status module LED should be green. If not, see [I/O Module LEDs, on page 184](#) for information about the LED states.

- h) Attach networking cables to the I/O ports.

The LED for each port should be green. If not, see [I/O Module LEDs, on page 184](#) for information about the LED states.

Replacing a Fan Tray

You can replace a fan tray module during operations so long as there are at least two other fan tray modules operating in the chassis. We recommend that you put a switch in fan tray maintenance mode before removing a fan tray. You can also remove a fan tray in order to replace one of the two fabric modules installed behind it. When not replacing a fan tray or a fabric module, there should be three fan trays operating in the chassis.



Note You have up to 72 hours to replace one fan tray as long as the switch air-inlet temperature does not exceed 86° Fahrenheit (30° C). If the temperature exceeds 86° Fahrenheit (30° C), the switch will shut down in 3 minutes. If you remove more than one fan tray at a time, the switch can operate up to three minutes before shutting down. To prevent a shutdown, remove only one fan tray at a time.

Starting from Cisco NX-OS Release 7.2(0)D1(1), use the **hardware fan-tray maintenance-mode [long | medium | short]** command to prepare a switch for fan tray removal. By default, the fans run at 100 percent speed for approximately 4 minutes to prepare for fan tray removal when the **hardware fan-tray maintenance-mode** command is used. Starting from Cisco NX-OS Release 8.1(1), by default, the fans run at 85 percent speed for approximately 4 minutes to prepare for fan tray removal when the **hardware fan-tray maintenance-mode** command is used.

Use the **long** keyword to run the fans at 65 percent speed for approximately 9 minutes to prepare for fan tray removal. Use the **medium** keyword to run the fans at 75 percent speed for approximately 6 minutes to prepare for fan tray removal. Use the **short** keyword to run the fans at 85 percent speed for approximately 4 minutes to prepare for fan tray removal. For more information about the **hardware fan-tray maintenance-mode**, see [Cisco Nexus 7000 Series NX-OS System Management Command Reference](#).

The fan tray maintenance mode will be cancelled in the following cases:

- If a temperature alarm is present.
- Hot-inlet temperature (Sup inlet temperature \geq 30 degrees Celsius)
- Fan-tray is absent.
- Post-cool period (time elapsed after fan tray removal) has crossed 4 minutes.



Note Fan tray maintenance mode is cancelled and fan speed is set to normal if fan tray migration or replacement is completed within 2 minutes of using the **hardware fan-tray maintenance-mode** command. If fan tray migration or replacement is not completed within 2 minutes, the remaining fan trays run at 85 percent speed for the next 2 minutes, and at 100 percent speed from then on.

- Pre-cool period (time elapsed before fan tray removal) has crossed 1 hour and 9 minutes—The fan tray has not been removed since the past 1 hour and 9 minutes during which the switch was ready for fan tray removal.

The following example shows the syslogs that are generated when the fan speed increases due to a minor temperature alarm:

```
2017 Apr 3 16:46:07 SWITCH %CARDCLIENT-2-SSE: XBAR:5 FABRIC ONLINE
2017 Apr 3 16:46:07 SWITCH %PLATFORM-5-MOD_STATUS: Fabric-Module 5 current-status is
MOD_STATUS_ONLINE/OK
2017 Apr 3 16:46:07 SWITCH %MODULE-5-XBAR_OK: Xbar 5 is online (Serial number: JAE1921079X)
2017 Apr 3 16:47:00 SWITCH %PLATFORM-2-MOD_TEMPMINALRM: Xbar-5 reported minor temperature
alarm. Sensor=1 Temperature=48 MinT
hreshold=20
2017 Apr 3 16:47:00 SWITCH %VSHD-5-VSHD_SYSLOG_CONFIG_I: Configured from vty by admin on
vsh.12644
2017 Apr 3 16:47:35 SWITCH %PLATFORM-6-PFM_INFO: Fan Zone 1 : Fan Speed will change from
45.88(0x75) to 54.12(0x8a)
2017 Apr 3 16:54:50 SWITCH %PLATFORM-2-PFM_MODULE_POWER_OFF: Manual power-off of Xbar 5
from Command Line Interface
2017 Apr 3 16:54:50 SWITCH %PLATFORM-5-XBAR_PWRDN: Xbar 5 powered down (Serial number
JAE1921079X)
2017 Apr 3 16:54:50 SWITCH %PLATFORM-5-MOD_STATUS: Fabric-Module 5 current-status is
MOD_STATUS_CONFIGPOWERED_DOWN
2017 Apr 3 16:54:50 SWITCH %PLATFORM-5-MOD_STATUS: Fabric-Module 5 current-status is
MOD_STATUS_POWERED_DOWN
2017 Apr 3 16:58:40 SWITCH %PLATFORM-6-PFM_INFO: Fan Zone 1 : Fan Speed will change from
54.12(0x8a) to 45.88(0x75)
2017 Apr 3 17:00:41 SWITCH %PLATFORM-2-PFM_MODULE_POWER_ON: Manual power-on of Xbar 5 from
Command Line Interface
2017 Apr 3 17:00:41 SWITCH %PLATFORM-2-XBAR_DETECT: Xbar 5 detected (Serial number
JAE1921079X)
2017 Apr 3 17:00:41 SWITCH %PLATFORM-5-XBAR_PWRUP: Xbar 5 powered up (Serial number
JAE1921079X)
2017 Apr 3 17:00:41 SWITCH %PLATFORM-5-MOD_STATUS: Fabric-Module 5 current-status is
MOD_STATUS_POWERED_UP
2017 Apr 3 17:00:59 SWITCH %CARDCLIENT-2-SSE: XBAR:5 FABRIC ONLINE
```

The following example shows the syslogs displaying the fan tray maintenance mode being cancelled after the post-cool period of 4 minutes is completed:

```
2017 Apr 3 16:20:08 SWITCH %PLATFORM-2-PFM_CRITICAL: FAN_MAINTENANCE_MODE: system is ready
for fan-removal.
2017 Apr 3 16:21:07 SWITCH %PLATFORM-2-FAN_REMOVED: Fan module 1(Serial number NCV2108V017)
Fan1(sys_fan1) removed
2017 Apr 3 16:21:08 SWITCH %PLATFORM-6-PFM_INFO: Fan Zone 1 : Fan Speed will change from
85.10(0xd9) to 74.90(0xbf)
2017 Apr 3 16:21:11 SWITCH %PLATFORM-1-PFM_ALERT: System shutdown in 3 days 0 hours 0 mins
0 seconds due to fan policy __pfm_
fanabsent_any_singlefan for fan1
2017 Apr 3 16:23:09 SWITCH %PLATFORM-6-PFM_INFO: Fan Zone 1 : Fan Speed will change from
```

```

74.90(0xbf) to 85.10(0xd9)
2017 Apr 3 16:25:09 SWITCH %PLATFORM-6-PFM_INFO: Fan Zone 1 : Fan Speed will change from
85.10(0xd9) to 100.00(0xff)
2017 Apr 3 16:25:33 SWITCH %PLATFORM-5-FAN_DETECT: Fan module 1(Serial number NCV2108V017)
Fan1(sys_fan1) detected
2017 Apr 3 16:25:33 SWITCH %PLATFORM-5-FAN_STATUS: Fan module 1(Serial number NCV2108V017)
Fan1(sys_fan1) current-status is F
AN_OK
2017 Apr 3 16:25:33 SWITCH %PLATFORM-2-FANMOD_FAN_OK: Fan module 1(Fan1(sys_fan1) fan) ok
2017 Apr 3 16:25:33 SWITCH %PLATFORM-6-PFM_INFO: Fan Zone 1 : Fan Speed will change from
100.00(0xff) to 45.88(0x75)
2017 Apr 3 16:25:33 SWITCH %PLATFORM-2-PFM_CRITICAL: FAN_MAINTENANCE_MODE_CANCELLED:
Reason(s): Temperature alarm: No, Superv
isor hot-inlet: No, Absent fans count: 0, Precool period completed: N/A, Postcool period
completed: Yes, Total maint. duratio
n: 564 seconds

```

If you need to remove the fan tray to replace a fabric module, see [Installing or Replacing a Fabric Module](#), on page 118.



Note The fan tray displays the fabric module LEDs so that you can see the status of the two fabric modules installed behind that fan tray.

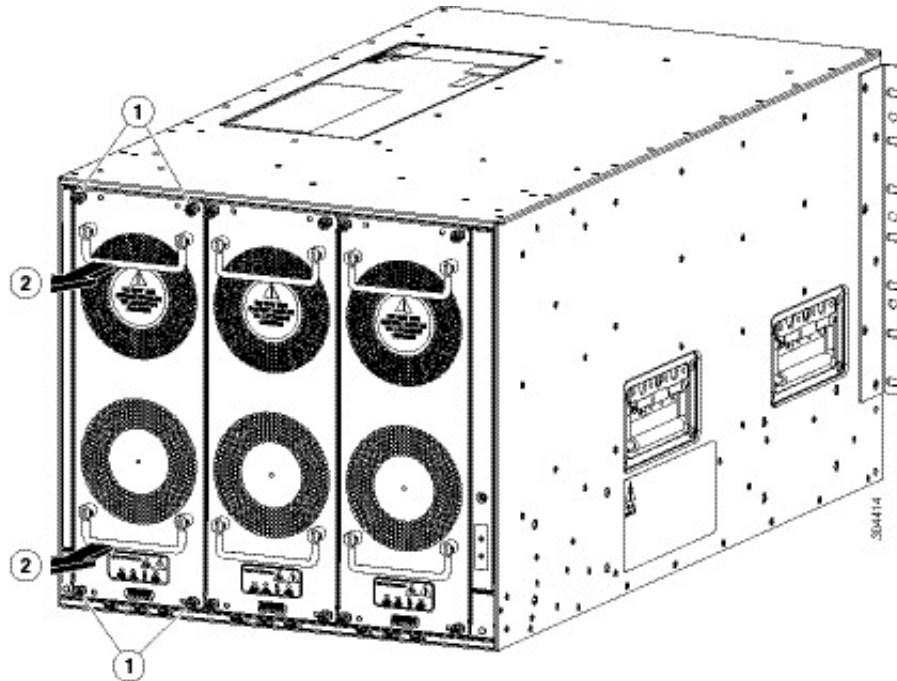
Before you begin

- You must follow ESD protocols, including the following:
 - You must wear a grounded ESD wristband (or other personal grounding device) whenever you handle the electronic modules outside the grounded chassis.
 - You must carry electronic modules by only their covered edges or handles. Do not touch their electronic components.
 - Whenever a module is outside a grounded chassis, place it flat on an antistatic surface or in an antistatic bag. Never lean the module on anything nor place anything else on top of the module nor lean anything on the module.
- Verify that the chassis is grounded.
- Verify that you have the following tools and equipment:
 - ESD wrist strap (or other personal grounding device)
 - Number 1 Phillips torque screwdriver
 - Manual torque screwdrivers are recommended. Be sure to never exceed the recommended torque setting for the screw that you are working with.
 - Replacement fan tray
 - N77-C7706-FAN=
- Put the switch in fan tray maintenance mode.

Step 1 Remove the fan tray as follows:

- a) Use a Phillips torque screwdriver to loosen the four captive screws on the fan tray until they are no longer connected to the chassis.
- b) Grab both fan tray handles with both of your hands.
- c) Pull the fan tray straight out of the slot.

Figure 27: Removing a Fan Tray



1	Unscrew four captive screws.	2	Pull on both handles to remove fan tray from the chassis.
---	------------------------------	---	---

- d) Set the fan tray on an antistatic surface or inside an antistatic bag.

Caution Do not touch the electrical connectors on the back side and do not set the back side connectors on anything—always set a fan tray down on a covered side to protect its connectors.

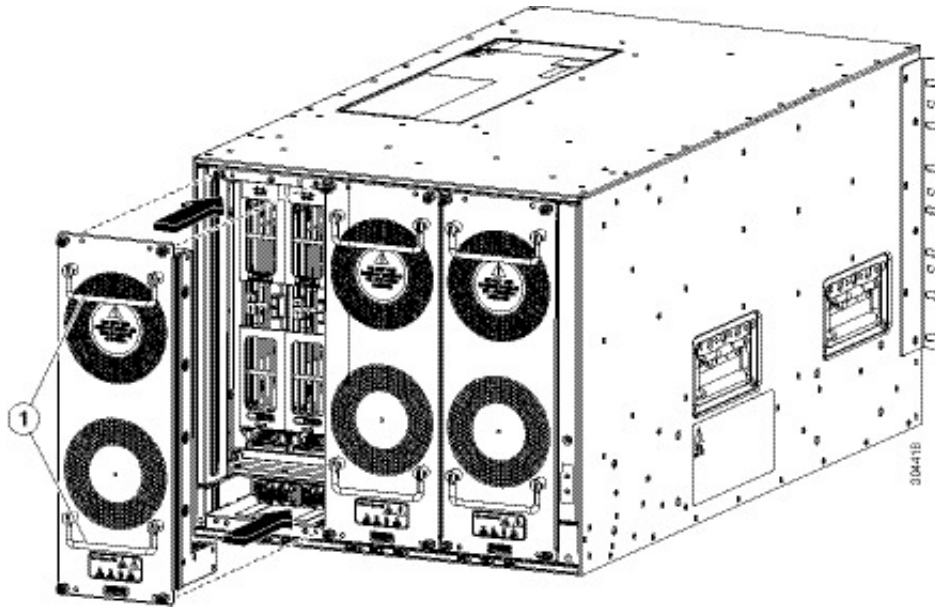
Step 2 Install the new fan tray in the open slot as follows:

- a) Unpack the new fan tray and inspect it for damage.

If anything is damaged or missing, contact your customer representative immediately.
- b) Hold both fan tray handles with both of your hands and align the back side of the fan tray to the open fan tray slot.

Two alignment pins on the top and two alignment pins on the bottom should align to holes at the top and bottom of the fan tray slot.

Figure 28: Installing a Fan Tray



1	Hold both handles with both of your hands.	2	Position the alignment pins at the top and bottom of the fan tray to alignment holes in the chassis and press the fan tray into the slot.
---	--	---	---

- c) Screw in each of the four captive screws to secure the fan tray to the chassis and tighten them to 8 in-lb (0.9 N·m) of torque.

Step 3 Verify that the fan tray is functioning by making sure that its Status LED is green.

For more information about the fan tray LEDs, see the [I/O Module LEDs, on page 184](#) topic.

Migrating from Gen 1 Fan Trays (N77-C7706-FAN) to Gen 2 Fan Trays (N77-C7706-FAN-2)

Perform the steps given below to replace all the three Gen 1 fan trays in a switch with Gen 2 fan trays:

1. Put the switch in fan tray maintenance mode by using the **hardware fan-tray maintenance-mode [long | medium | short]** command.
2. Remove the left-most Gen 1 fan tray, FAN TRAY 1 (N77-C7706-FAN), from the switch.
3. Insert the Gen 2 fan tray (N77-C7706-FAN-2) into the empty fan tray slot.



Note The switch shuts down if a mix of Gen 1 (N77-C7706-FAN) and Gen 2 (N77-C7706-FAN-2) fan trays are present in the same switch for more than 21600 seconds (6 hours). The syslog message "PLATFORM-0-FAN_MISMATCH_TIME: Mismatch of Fan modules. Both Gen1 and Gen2 fans are present in the fantray for <number> seconds" is displayed at regular intervals when both Gen 1 and Gen 2 fan trays are present in the same switch.

4. Remove the Gen 1 fan tray from FAN TRAY 2.
5. Insert the Gen 2 fan tray into the empty fan tray slot.
6. Remove the Gen 1 fan tray from FAN TRAY 3.
7. Insert the Gen 2 fan tray into the empty fan tray slot.

The following example shows the syslogs that are generated when only one of the three installed Gen 2 fan trays is replaced by a Gen 1 fan tray, resulting in a fan tray mismatch:

```

2017 Apr 3 17:25:19 SWITCH %PLATFORM-2-FAN_REMOVED: Fan module 3(Serial number NCV2108V01K)
  Fan3(sys_fan3) removed
2017 Apr 3 17:25:19 SWITCH %PLATFORM-6-PFM_INFO: Fan Zone 1 : Fan Speed will change from
45.88(0x75) to 100.00(0xff)
2017 Apr 3 17:25:32 SWITCH %PLATFORM-5-FAN_DETECT: Fan module 3(Serial number DCH1910A06N)
  Fan3(sys_fan3) detected
2017 Apr 3 17:25:32 SWITCH %PLATFORM-5-FAN_STATUS: Fan module 3(Serial number DCH1910A06N)
  Fan3(sys_fan3) current-status is F
AN_OK
2017 Apr 3 17:25:32 SWITCH %PLATFORM-2-FANMOD_FAN_OK: Fan module 3(Fan3(sys_fan3) fan) ok
2017 Apr 3 17:25:32 SWITCH %PLATFORM-6-PFM_INFO: Fan Zone 1 : Fan Speed will change from
100.00(0xff) to 80.00(0xcc)
2017 Apr 3 17:25:32 SWITCH %PLATFORM-0-FAN_MISMATCH_TIME: Mismatch of Fan modules. Both
Gen1 and Gen2 fans are present in the
fantray for 1 seconds
2017 Apr 3 17:25:37 SWITCH %PLATFORM-1-PFM_ALERT: System shutdown in 0 days 6 hours 0 mins
0 seconds due to fan policy __pfm_
_fanpresent_mismatch for AllFans
2017 Apr 3 17:25:41 SWITCH %PLATFORM-0-FAN_MISMATCH_TIME: Mismatch of Fan modules. Both
Gen1 and Gen2 fans are present in the
fantray for 9 seconds
2017 Apr 3 17:25:51 SWITCH %PLATFORM-0-FAN_MISMATCH_TIME: Mismatch of Fan modules. Both
Gen1 and Gen2 fans are present in the
fantray for 19 seconds
2017 Apr 3 17:26:01 SWITCH %PLATFORM-0-FAN_MISMATCH_TIME: Mismatch of Fan modules. Both
Gen1 and Gen2 fans are present in the
fantray for 29 seconds
2017 Apr 3 17:26:11 SWITCH %PLATFORM-0-FAN_MISMATCH_TIME: Mismatch of Fan modules. Both
Gen1 and Gen2 fans are present in the
fantray for 39 seconds
2017 Apr 3 17:26:21 SWITCH %PLATFORM-0-FAN_MISMATCH_TIME: Mismatch of Fan modules. Both
Gen1 and Gen2 fans are present in the
fantray for 49 seconds
2017 Apr 3 17:26:31 SWITCH %PLATFORM-0-FAN_MISMATCH_TIME: Mismatch of Fan modules. Both
Gen1 and Gen2 fans are present in the
fantray for 59 seconds
2017 Apr 3 17:26:37 SWITCH %PLATFORM-1-PFM_ALERT: System shutdown in 0 days 5 hours 59 mins
0 seconds due to fan policy __pfm_
_fanpresent_mismatch for AllFans
2017 Apr 3 17:26:41 SWITCH %PLATFORM-0-FAN_MISMATCH_TIME: Mismatch of Fan modules. Both
Gen1 and Gen2 fans are present in the

```

```

fantray for 69 seconds
2017 Apr 3 17:26:51 SWITCH %PLATFORM-0-FAN_MISMATCH_TIME: Mismatch of Fan modules. Both
Gen1 and Gen2 fans are present in the
fantray for 79 seconds
2017 Apr 3 17:27:01 SWITCH %PLATFORM-0-FAN_MISMATCH_TIME: Mismatch of Fan modules. Both
Gen1 and Gen2 fans are present in the
fantray for 89 seconds
2017 Apr 3 17:27:11 SWITCH %PLATFORM-0-FAN_MISMATCH_TIME: Mismatch of Fan modules. Both
Gen1 and Gen2 fans are present in the
fantray for 99 seconds
2017 Apr 3 17:27:17 SWITCH %PLATFORM-2-FAN_REMOVED: Fan module 3(Serial number DCH1910A06N)
Fan3(sys_fan3) removed
2017 Apr 3 17:27:17 SWITCH %PLATFORM-6-PFM_INFO: Fan Zone 1 : Fan Speed will change from
80.00(0xcc) to 100.00(0xff)
2017 Apr 3 17:27:36 SWITCH %PLATFORM-5-FAN_DETECT: Fan module 3(Serial number NCV2108V01K)
Fan3(sys_fan3) detected
2017 Apr 3 17:27:36 SWITCH %PLATFORM-5-FAN_STATUS: Fan module 3(Serial number NCV2108V01K)
Fan3(sys_fan3) current-status is F
AN_OK
2017 Apr 3 17:27:36 SWITCH %PLATFORM-2-FANMOD_FAN_OK: Fan module 3(Fan3(sys_fan3) fan) ok
2017 Apr 3 17:27:36 SWITCH %PLATFORM-6-PFM_INFO: Fan Zone 1 : Fan Speed will change from
100.00(0xff) to 45.88(0x75)

```

Installing or Replacing a Fabric Module

The fabric modules are located as follows behind the fan trays on the back side of the chassis:

- Fabric slots 1 and 2 are behind fan tray slot 1
- Fabric slots 3 and 4 are behind fan tray slot 2
- Fabric slots 5 and 6 are behind fan tray slot 3

When the fan trays are installed, they display the LED states for the fabric modules installed behind them.

You can install a fabric module during operations so long as there is at least one other fabric module installed and functioning in the chassis. To install or replace a fabric module, you must first remove the fan tray that is in front of the fabric module. If the chassis has fewer than six fabric modules, leave the empty slots unfilled—the fan tray that you place outside the fabric modules maintains the designed airflow for the chassis.

Before you begin

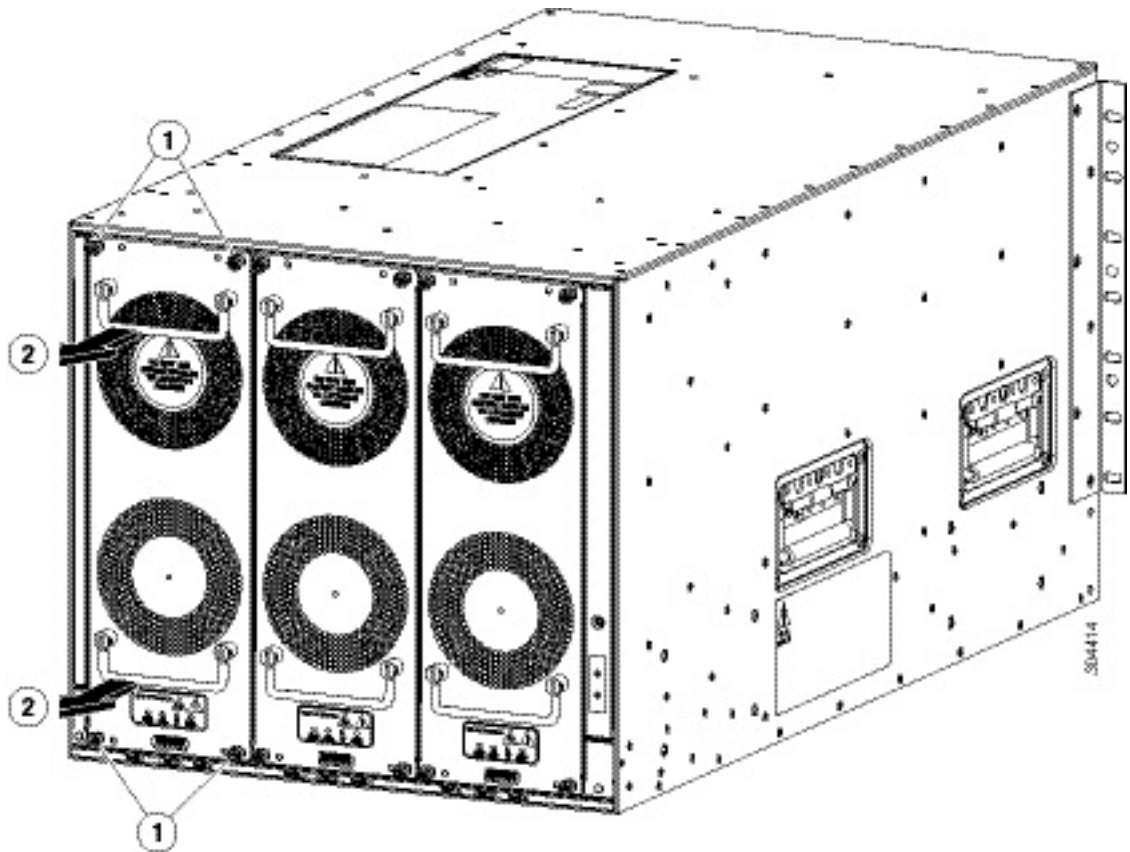
- The chassis must be grounded.
- You must be wearing wearing an ESD wrist strap (or other ESD prevention device) that is connected to the ESD port on the grounded chassis.
- Starting from Cisco NX-OS Release 7.2(0)D1(1), put the switch in fan tray maintenance mode to prepare the switch for fan tray removal.

Step 1

Remove the fan tray that covers the fabric module that you are replacing by following these steps:

- a) Loosen four captive screws on the fan tray until they are loose and are no longer connected to the chassis.
- b) Grab both handles with both of your hands and pull the bottom of the fan tray out so that its connectors disconnect from the chassis (see the following figure).

Figure 29: Removing a Fan Tray



1	Unscrew four captive screws until they are no longer attached to the chassis.	2	Pull both handles to remove the module from the chassis.
---	---	---	--

- c) After the connectors are free of the chassis connections, pull whole fan tray off the chassis.
- d) Set the fan tray down on one of its covered sides only on an antistatic pad or inside an antistatic bag.

Caution Do not touch the electrical connectors on the back side and do not set the back side connectors on anything—always set a fan tray down on a covered side to protect the connectors.

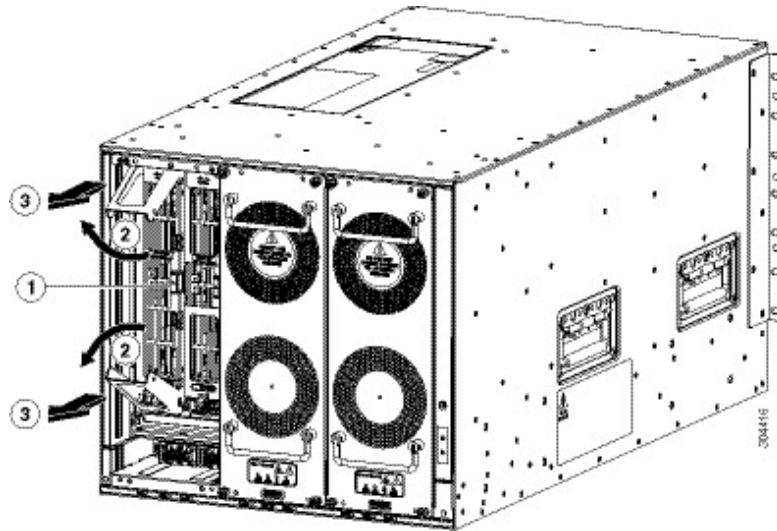
Step 2

If you need to open a fabric slot for the new fabric module, remove a fabric module as follows:

- a) With your face at least 12 inches (30 cm) away from the front of the fabric module, press both ejector buttons on the front of the module (see Callout 1 in the following figure).

Caution Keep your face away from the front of the fabric module so that the levers do not hit your face when they spring out from the front of the module.

Figure 30: Unlocking a Fabric Module from its Slot



1	Press the eject button.	3	Pull the handles to partially remove the module from the slot.
2	Handles spring out from the module.		

- b) Grasp each of the two levers with your two hands and fully rotate the levers out 90 degrees from the fabric module.
- c) Pull both levers until the fabric module is about 3 inches (7 cm) out of the chassis (see Callout 3 in the previous figure).
- d) Rotate both levers back to the front of the module.

Each lever clicks when it locks in place at the front of the module.

- e) Grasp the front of the module with one hand, place the other hand under the module to support its weight, and pull the module out of the slot (see Callout 2 in the previous figure).

Caution Be careful not to touch any electrical contacts on the back of the module. Handle only covered sides or edges of the module.

- f) Place the module on an antistatic surface or inside an antistatic bag.

Step 3

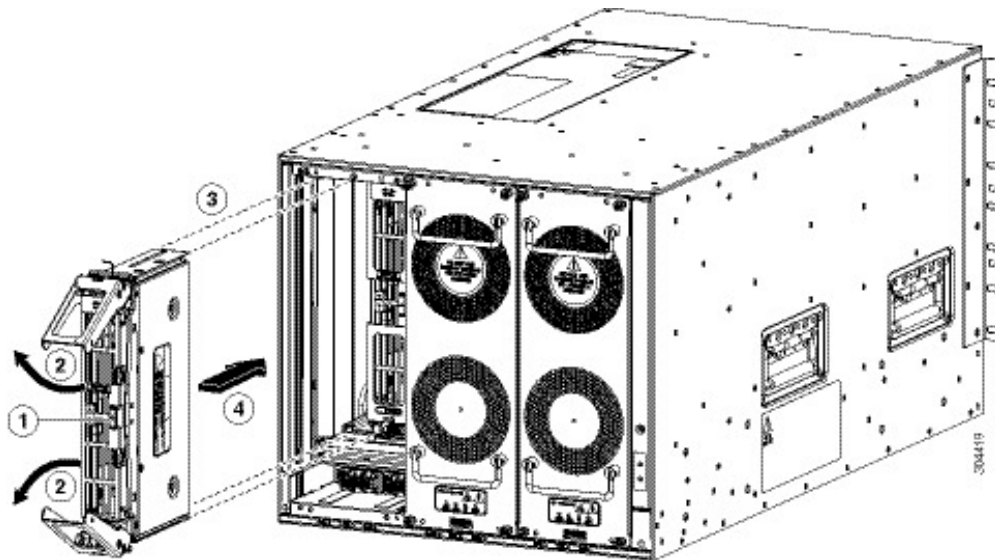
Install the new fabric module in the chassis as follows:

- a) Unpack the new fabric module and inspect it for damage.

If anything is damaged or missing, contact your customer representative immediately.

- b) Hold the front of the module with one hand and place the other hand under the module.
- c) Rotate the module clockwise and align the back of the module to the module guides at the top and bottom of the open fabric slot in the chassis.
- d) Push the module half way into the slot (see the following figure).

Figure 31: Inserting the Fabric Module into the Chassis



1	Align the module with the guides in the open slot and push the module half way into the slot.	3	Handles spring out from the module.
2	Press both eject buttons.		

- e) With your face away from the fabric module, press both ejector buttons on the front of the module.

Caution Keep your face at least 12 inches (30 cm) from the front of the fabric module so that the ejector handles do not hit your face when they spring out from the front of the module.

Both ejector handles spring out from the front of the module (see Callout 2 in the previous figure).

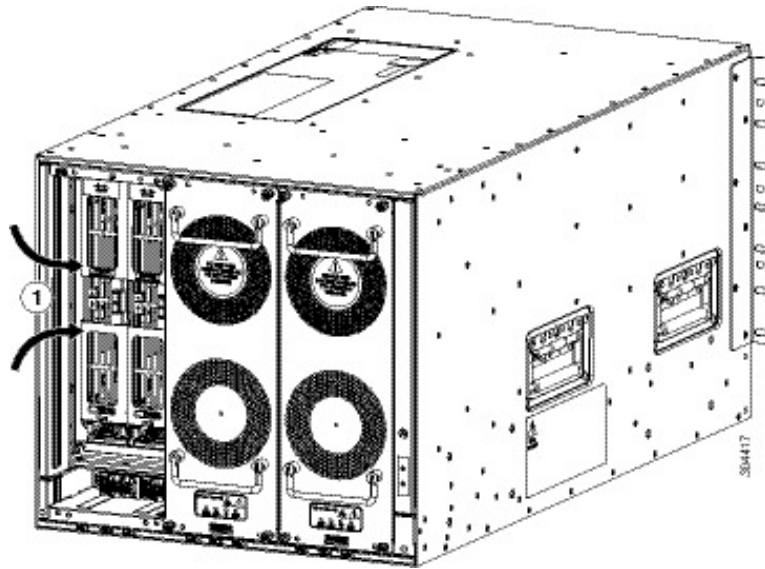
- f) Grasp both handles, fully rotate the levers 90 degrees from the front of the module, and push the module all the way into the slot until it seats.

The front of the module will be about 1/4 inch out from the installed fabric modules.

- g) Simultaneously rotate both handles to the front of the module while pressing the module further into the slot (see Callout 1 in the following figure).

The handles click when fully rotated to the front of the module.

Figure 32: Securing the Fabric Module to the Slot



1	Rotate the handles to the front of the module until they click.	
---	---	--

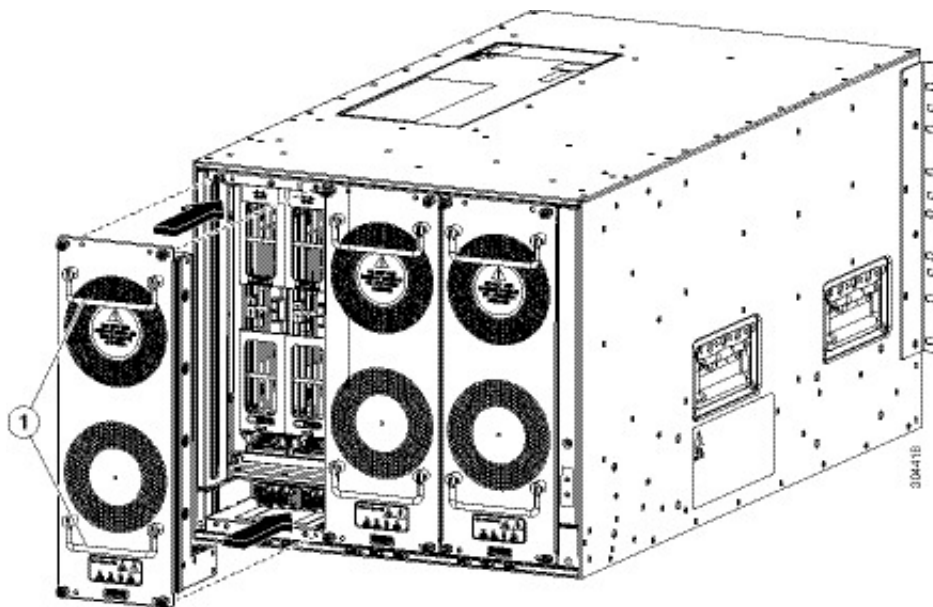
h) Verify that the module is secured to the chassis and that you cannot remove it without pressing the eject buttons.

Step 4

Reinstall the fan tray over the installed fabric module as follows:

- a) Hold both fan tray handles with both of your hands and align the back side of the fan tray to the open fan tray slot. Two alignment pins on the top and two alignment pins on the bottom should align to holes at the top and bottom of the fan tray slot.

Figure 33: Installing a Fan Tray



1	Hold both handles with both of your hands.	2	Position the alignment pins at the top and bottom of the fan tray to alignment holes in the chassis and press the fan tray into the slot.
---	--	---	---

- b) With the electrical contacts on the fan tray aligned to contacts on the back plane, press the fan tray fully into the slot. The front of the fan tray should be even with the fronts of the other fan trays and the four captive screws on the fan tray should be aligned to four screw holes in the chassis.
- c) Screw in each of the four captive screws on the front of the fan tray to secure the fan tray to the chassis. Tighten each screw to 8 in-lb (0.9 N·m) of torque.
- d) Verify that the Status LED is green. For more information about the LED states, see [I/O Module LEDs, on page 184](#).

Replacing Fabric 2 Modules with Fabric 3 Modules

If you are running Cisco NX-OS 8.3(1) or a later release on a Cisco Nexus 7706 switch, you can replace all the Fabric 2 modules with Fabric 3 modules. You can replace the modules during operations if you replace each module within a couple of minutes so that the switch can maintain its designed airflow. The replacement procedure is non-disruptive to switch operations if there is at least one fabric module installed and operating in the switch while you replace the other fabric module.

To replace Fabric 2 modules with Fabric 3 modules, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Verify that the switch is running Cisco NX-OS Release 8.3(1) or a later release.
- Step 2** Replace the Fabric 2 module that is in the lowest numbered fabric slot.
- Step 3** Enter the **show module xbar** command, as shown in the example below, to display the types of fabric modules installed in the fabric slots.

```
switch# show module xbar
Xbar Ports  Module-Type                               Model                               Status
---  ---  -
1    0    Fabric Module 3                               N77-C77xx-FAB-3                   ok
3    0    Fabric Module 3                               N77-C77xx-FAB-3                   ok
5    0    Fabric Module 3                               N77-C77xx-FAB-3                   ok

Xbar Sw      Hw
---  -
1    NA        0.509
3    NA        0.509
5    NA        0.505

Xbar MAC-Address(es)                               Serial-Num
---  -
1    NA        JAE214105ZS
3    NA        JAE214105ZV
5    NA        JAE2122035C

* this terminal session
```

- Step 4** If one or more of the fabric modules is indicated as “Fabric Module 2,” repeat Step 2 to replace the Fabric 2 module with the Fabric 3 module and then repeat Step 3 to display the types of fabric modules installed in the fabric slots.

Recovery Procedure for Downgrading to Fabric 2 Modules from Fabric 3 Modules

This section describes the steps needed to downgrade from Fabric 3 modules to Fabric 2 modules if there are issues with the Fabric 3 upgrade.

Scenario 1

If both Fabric 2 and Fabric 3 modules are up in the switch (FAB2_FAB3 mode), then replace the Fabric 3 modules with the Fabric 2 modules.

Scenario 2

If the switch is loaded with Fabric 3 modules only (FAB3 mode), then migrating to Fabric 2 is disruptive. The Fabric 2 module will power down when the switch is in FAB3 mode.

Perform the steps given below to replace FAB3 modules with FAB2 modules when the switch is loaded with only FAB3 modules:

-
- Step 1** Replace one FAB3 module with a FAB2 module. The switch is still in FAB3 mode.
- Step 2** The FAB2 module will be in power down state.
- Step 3** Repeat Step 1 to replace FAB3 modules with FAB2 modules in all slots until a single FAB3 module is remaining in the switch.
- Step 4** Remove the last FAB3 module. The I/O modules will be powered down due to non-availability of Stage2 bandwidth.
- Step 5** Insert a FAB2 module in the slot from which the last FAB3 module was removed. This FAB2 module will power up and all the I/O modules will also power up in FAB2 mode.
- Step 6** After all the I/O modules come online, power up the remaining FAB2 modules by using the **no poweroff xbar moduleNumber** command.
-

Installing or Replacing a Power Supply in a Switch Chassis

You can install up to four power supplies of the following types:

- 3-kW AC power supply (N77-AC-3KW)
- 3-kW DC power supply (N77-DC-3KW)
- 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC power supply (N77-HV-3.5KW)

If you leave any power supply slots empty, you must install a blank filler plate () in that slot to maintain the designed airflow.

You follow the same steps to install AC, DC and HVAC/HVDC power supplies into the switch, but you ground them differently. For an AC and HVAC/HVDC power supply, you automatically ground it when you connect its power cable to the power supply and the power source.

Before you begin

- The switch chassis must be installed in a cabinet or rack that is secured to the data center.

You need the following additional tools and equipment:

- Nut driver attachment for Number 1 Phillips-head screwdriver or ratchet wrench with torque capability (used only for DC power supplies)
- Crimping tool
- Grounding wire—Size this wire to meet local and national installation requirements. For U.S. installations, you must use a 6 AWG copper conductor. For installations outside the U.S., consult your local and national electrical codes. The length of the grounding wire depends on the proximity of the switch to proper grounding facilities.

Step 1

If you need to open a power supply slot for another power supply, follow these steps:

Note If you need to remove a blank filler plate, unscrew its captive screws and pull it off the chassis. Go to Step 2.

- a) Turn off the power for the power supply that you are removing, as follows:
 1. Ensure that the power switch on the front of the power supply is set to standby (labelled as). The Output LED turns off.
 2. Verify that the Output LED turns off. If the LED is still on, return to Step 1.
 3. If you are removing a DC power supply, ensure that the power is turned off at the power source by turning off the power for that circuit, and verify that the Input LEDs turn off.
- b) If you are removing a power supply, detach the power and ground cables as follows:
 - For a AC power supply, unplug the power cables that are attached to the power supply and the power source.
 - For a 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC power supply, release the built-in latch and unplug the power cable from the power source.
- c) Remove the power supply or blank filler plate from the power supply slot as follows:

Note To remove a blank filler plate, unscrew its captive screws and pull on its handle to remove the plate from the slot.

 - For a 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC power supply, disconnect the power cable from the power supply by pressing the release button on the power cable, pull the power supply part way out of the slot by its handle, place your other hand under the module to support its weight, and pull it fully from the slot.

Step 2

Install the new power supply in the open slot as follows:

- a) Verify that the power switch on the front of the new power supply is set to standby (labelled as) and that the power supply is not connected to any power sources.

- b) Hold the handle on the power supply with one hand, place your other hand under the power supply to support its weight, and position the power supply with its back end at the open power supply bay.
- c) Slide the unit all the way into the power supply bay until one of the following situations occurs:
 - For a 3.5-kW power supply, the built-in latch secures the power cable to the power supply.

What to do next

- For an AC and HVAC/HVDC (when used with an input AC source) power supply, you must connect it to an AC power source (see the [Connecting a 3-kW AC Power Supply to AC Power Sources](#) and [Connecting a 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply to AC Power Sources](#) topic). The power supply will be automatically grounded through its power cable.

Connecting a 3-kW AC Power Supply to AC Power Sources

You use one power cord to connect a 3-kW power supply to its AC power source and to ground the power supply. Depending on the power mode that you use for the switch, you either connect all of the power supplies to one AC power source or you connect half of the power supplies to one AC power source and the other half to another AC power source:

- For combined power mode (no power redundancy), you need enough power supplies to power all switch operations and connect all of the power supplies to the same AC power source. You can install the power supplies in any open power supply slot in the chassis.
- For power supply redundancy mode ($n+1$ redundancy mode), you need enough power supplies to power all switch operations and one extra power supply that can replace a failing power supply. You connect all power supplies to the same AC power source. You can install the power supplies in any open power supply slot in the chassis.
- For input source redundancy (grid redundancy) mode or full redundancy mode, you need twice the number of power supplies needed to power the switch operations. You connect half of the power supplies to one power source for active power and the other half to another power source for redundant power. You must ensure that the power supplies on the left side of the chassis are connected to one grid and that the power supplies on the right side of the chassis are connected to the other grid.

Before you begin

Before you connect power supplies to one or two power sources, ensure all of the following:

- You have receptacles for one or two AC power sources within reach of the power supply cables. The number of power sources depends on the power mode to be used for the switch.
 - Combined power (no power redundancy)—One AC power source
 - Power supply redundancy ($n+1$ redundancy)—One AC power source
 - Input source redundancy (power-grid redundancy)—Two AC power sources
 - Full redundancy—Two AC power sources
- The AC power sources are rated as follows:

- For North American installations—20A with 110V or 220V circuits.
- For international installations—size the circuits by local and national standards.
- The power supply is already installed in the chassis.
- The chassis is connected to an earth ground.

-
- Step 1** Ensure that the power supply switch located on the front of the power supply is set at standby (labeled as 0).
- Step 2** Plug one AC power cable into the power supply, and pull down the retention clip over the plug on the power cable.
- Step 3** Plug the other end of the power cable into a AC power source supplied by the data center.
- Note** If you are using the combined power mode or power supply redundancy, you connect the power cables to the same 20-A circuit. If you are using the input source redundancy mode or full redundancy mode, you connect half of the power cables to one AC power source and the other half to another AC power source.
- Warning** To reduce risk of electric shock and fire, take care when connecting units to the supply circuit so that wiring is not overloaded.
- Statement 1018
- Warning** This product relies on the building's installation for short-circuit (overcurrent) protection. To reduce risk of electric shock or fire, ensure that the protective device is rated not greater than:
- 250V, 20 A
- Statement 1005
- Step 4** Turn the power supply switch from standby to on (from 0 to 1 as labeled on the power switch).
- Step 5** Verify that the power supply is receiving AC power and outputting DC power by making sure that the INPUT and OUTPUT power supply LEDs are lit and the FAULT LED is not lit or flashing. For an explanation of all the power supply LEDs and the conditions that they indicate, see [Power Supply LEDs](#)
- Note** When you first activate the power supply, you can verify the functionality of the LEDs by checking that each LED turns on for a couple of seconds.
- If the Fault LED is flashing red, turn the power switch to standby (labeled as 0), check the AC power connections on the power supply and the AC power source, and then turn the power switch back on (labeled as 1). The Input and Output LEDs for the connected power supplies should be green and the Fault LED should be off.

Connecting a 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply to AC Power Sources

You use one power cord to connect a 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC power supply to its AC power source and to ground the power supply. Depending on the power mode that you use for the switch, you either connect all of the power supplies to one AC power source or you connect half of the power supplies to one AC power source and the other half to another AC power source:

- For combined power mode (no power redundancy), you need enough power supplies to power all switch operations and connect all of the power supplies to the same AC power source. You can install the power supplies in any open power supply slot in the chassis.

- For power supply redundancy mode ($n+1$ redundancy mode), you need enough power supplies to power all switch operations and one extra power supply that can replace a failing power supply. You connect all power supplies to the same AC power source. You can install the power supplies in any open power supply slot in the chassis.
- For input source redundancy (grid redundancy) mode or full redundancy mode, you need twice the number of power supplies needed to power the switch operations. You connect half of the power supplies to one power source for active power and the other half to another power source for redundant power. You must ensure that the power supplies on the left side of the chassis are connected to one grid and that the power supplies on the right side of the chassis are connected to the other grid.

Before you begin

Before you connect power supplies to one or two power sources, ensure all of the following:

- You have receptacles for one or two AC power sources within reach of the power supply cables. The number of power sources depends on the power mode to be used for the switch.
 - Combined power (no power redundancy)—One AC power source
 - Power supply redundancy ($n+1$ redundancy)—One AC power source
 - Input source redundancy (power-grid redundancy)—Two AC power sources
 - Full redundancy—Two AC power sources
- The AC power sources are rated as follows:
 - For North American installations—20A with 110V or 220V circuits.
 - For international installations—size the circuits by local and national standards.
- The power supply is already installed in the chassis.
- The chassis is connected to an earth ground.

Step 1 Ensure that the power supply switch located on the front of the power supply is set at standby (labeled as 0).

Step 2 Plug the AC power cable into the power supply. The built-in latch secures the power cable to the power supply. You can disconnect the power cable from the power supply by pressing the release button on the power cable.

Step 3 Plug or connect the other end of the power cable into a AC power source supplied by the data center.

Note If you are using the combined power mode or power supply redundancy, you connect the power cables to the same 20-A circuit. If you are using the input source redundancy mode or full redundancy mode, you connect half of the power cables to one AC power source and the other half to another AC power source.

Warning To reduce risk of electric shock and fire, take care when connecting units to the supply circuit so that wiring is not overloaded.

Statement 1018

Warning This product relies on the building's installation for short-circuit (overcurrent) protection. To reduce risk of electric shock or fire, ensure that the protective device is rated not greater than:

250V, 20 A

Statement 1005

Step 4 Turn the power supply switch from standby to on (from 0 to 1 as labeled on the power switch).

Step 5 Verify that the power supply is receiving AC power and outputting DC power by making sure that the INPUT and OUTPUT power supply LEDs are lit and the FAULT LED is not lit or flashing. For an explanation of all the power supply LEDs and the conditions that they indicate, see [Power Supply LEDs](#)

Note When you first activate the power supply, you can verify the functionality of the LEDs by checking that each LED turns on for a couple of seconds.

If the Fault LED is flashing red, turn the power switch to standby (labeled as 0), check the power connections on the power supply and the AC power source, and then turn the power switch back on (labeled as 1). The Input and Output LEDs for the connected power supplies should be green and the Fault LED should be off.

Connecting DC Power Supplies with Power Sources

Connect each installed DC power supply with a DC power circuit as follows:



Note If you are using combined power mode (no power redundancy) or power supply ($n+1$) power mode, connect all of the power supplies to the same power circuit (grid).

If you are using input source ($n+n$) or full power mode, connect half of the power supplies (located in slots 1 and 2) to one AC power circuit and the other half of the power supplies (located in slots 3 and 4) to another AC power circuit.

Before you begin

- The power supplies are installed in the chassis.
- A DC power source is within reach of power cables that will be attached to the power supplies.
- Power cables are available to connect each DC power supply to the DC power source.

Step 1 Turn the power switch to standby (labeled 0 on the power switch).

Step 2 Turn off the power at the circuit breakers for the portions of the DC grid power that you are connecting to and verify that all of the LEDs on the power supplies are off.

Warning Before performing any of the following procedures, ensure that power is removed from the DC circuit.

Statement 1003

Step 3 Size the power cables to the distance between the power supply and the DC power grid. If you need to cut the cable, cut it at the end that connects to the DC power grid, remove 0.75 inch (19 mm) of insulation from the cut ends, and attach them to the DC power system. Be sure to connect the negative cables to negative lines and positive cables to positive lines.

Note For all your power connections, if you are using cables with two different colors, use one color cable for all positive circuits and the other color for all negative circuits.

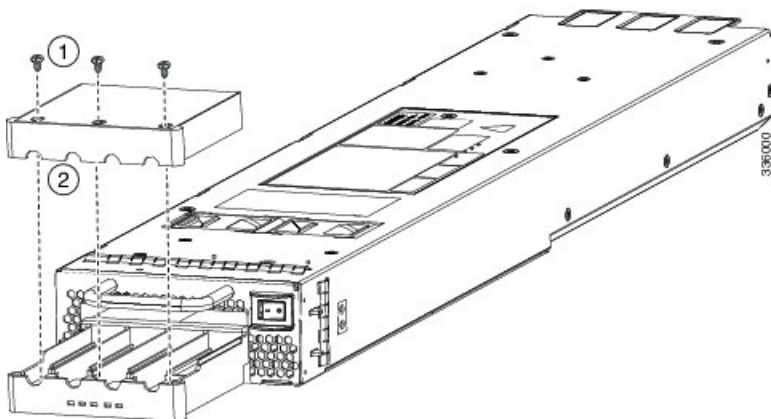
Warning Hazardous voltage or energy may be present on DC power terminals. Always replace the cover when the terminals are not in service. Be sure uninsulated conductors are not accessible when cover is in place.

Statement 1075

Step 4 Remove the three screws that hold down the safety cover for the terminal box on the front of the DC power supply and remove the cover (see the following figure).

Note The terminal box has four slots for four power terminals (ordered as negative [-], positive [+], positive [+], and negative [-]). Each terminal has two nuts that you use to fasten a power cable to the terminal.

Figure 34: Removing the Safety Cover for the Terminal Box on a 3-kW DC Power Supply



1	Remove three screws from the safety cover.	2	Remove the cover.
---	--	---	-------------------

Step 5 Install four cables (two positive and two negative cables) in the four terminal slots as follows:

- Unscrew the two nuts in each of the four terminal slots.
- Attach and crimp each lug to the end of each power cable.
- Attach each cable lug to the two terminal posts in each slot, fasten with two nuts, and tighten to 40 in-lb (4.5 N·m).

Note For all your power connections, if you are using cables with two different colors, use one color cable for all positive circuits and the other color for all negative circuits.

- Replace the safety cover on the terminal box and fasten with three screws.

Step 6 Install the four cables from the DC power supply to a DC power source as follows:

- If the unconnected end of each power cable is not stripped of its insulation for the last 0.75 inches (19 mm), use wire strippers to remove that amount of insulation.
- Attach the negative cables to the negative terminals of a DC power source, and attach the positive cables to the positive terminals of the same power source.

Note If you are using combined power mode or power supply redundancy mode, connect all the power supplies in the chassis to the same power source. If you are using input source redundancy mode or full redundancy mode, connect half the power supplies to one DC power source and the other half of the power supplies to another DC power source.

- Step 7** For the powered down circuits connected to the power supplies, turn on the power at the circuit breaker. The Input 1 (IN1) and Input 2 (IN2) LEDs turn on each connected power supply.
- Step 8** Turn on the power supply by setting the power switch to 1. The LEDs should flash and then the Output LED should turn on in addition to the Input LEDs.
- If the FAULT LED is lit or flashing, call Cisco TAC for assistance.

What to do next

You are ready to connect the switch to the network.

Connecting a 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply to DC Power Sources

You use one power cord to connect a 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC power supply to its DC power source and to ground the power supply. Depending on the power mode that you use for the switch, you either connect all of the power supplies to one DC power source or you connect half of the power supplies to one DC power source and the other half to another DC power source.

Before you begin

Before you connect power supplies to one or two power sources, ensure all of the following:

- The power supply is already installed in the chassis.
- A DC power source is within reach of power cables that will be attached to the power supplies.
- Power cables are available to connect each HVAC/HVDC power supply to the DC power source.

-
- Step 1** Ensure that the power supply switch located on the front of the power supply is set at standby (labeled as 0).
- Step 2** Plug the DC power cable into the power supply. The built-in latch secures the power cable to the power supply. You can disconnect the power cable from the power supply by pressing the release button on the power cable.
- Step 3** Plug or connect the other end of the power cable into a DC power source supplied by the data center.

Note Connect the power supply to the appropriate polarity and ground as indicated on the power cable plug or as marked on the ring lug cable.

Warning To reduce risk of electric shock and fire, take care when connecting units to the supply circuit so that wiring is not overloaded.

Statement 1018

Warning This product relies on the building's installation for short-circuit (overcurrent) protection. To reduce risk of electric shock or fire, ensure that the protective device is rated not greater than:

250V, 20 A

Statement 1005

- Step 4** Turn the power supply switch from standby to on (from 0 to 1 as labeled on the power switch).

Step 5 Verify that the power supply is receiving DC power by making sure that the INPUT and OUTPUT power supply LEDs are lit and the FAULT LED is not lit or flashing. For an explanation of all the power supply LEDs and the conditions that they indicate, see [Power Supply LEDs](#)

Note When you first activate the power supply, you can verify the functionality of the LEDs by checking that each LED turns on for a couple of seconds.

If the Fault LED is flashing red, turn the power switch to standby (labeled as 0), check the HVAC/HVDC power connections on the power supply and the DC power source, and then turn the power switch back on (labeled as 1). The Input and Output LEDs for the connected power supplies should be green and the Fault LED should be off.



APPENDIX **A**

Switch Specifications

This appendix includes the following topics:

- [Environmental Specifications](#), on page 133
- [Switch Dimensions](#), on page 134
- [Power Requirements](#), on page 134
- [Maximum Power Available for 3-kW AC Power Supplies](#), on page 135
- [Maximum Power Available for 3-kW DC Power Supplies](#), on page 135
- [Maximum Power Available for 3.5-kW Inputs \(AC\)](#), on page 136
- [Maximum Power Available for 3.5-kW Inputs \(DC\)](#), on page 137
- [Weights and Quantities for the Chassis, Modules, Fan Trays, and Power Supplies](#), on page 138
- [Transceivers, Connectors, and Cables Used with Each I/O Module](#), on page 139
- [Power Supply Cable Specifications](#), on page 166

Environmental Specifications

Environment		Specification
Temperature	Ambient operating	32 to 104°F (0 to 40°C)
	Ambient nonoperating	−40 to 158°F (−40 to 70°C)
Relative humidity	Ambient (noncondensing) operating	8 to 80%
	Ambient (noncondensing) nonoperating	5 to 90%
Altitude	Operating	−500 to 13,123 feet (−152 to 4,000 meters), agency certified 0 to 6500 feet (0 to 1980 meters)
	Storage	−1,000 to 30,000 feet (−305 to 9,144 meters)

Switch Dimensions

Switch Component	Width	Depth	Height
Cisco Nexus 7706 chassis	17.3 inches (43.9 cm)	32.0 inches (81.3 cm)	15.75 inches (40.0 cm) (9 RU)
Cable management system and front door	18.3 inches (46.5 cm)	6.5 inches (16.5 cm)	— ¹

¹ The total height of the cable management system is within the height of the chassis. The cable management system is added to the front of the chassis but does not add any height to the chassis.

Power Requirements

Table 4: Power Requirements for the Cisco Nexus 7706 Switch Modules

Component	Quantity	Maximum	Typical
Supervisor Modules	1 or 2 (same type if using 2)	—	—
Supervisor 2 Enhanced (N77-SUP2E)		265 W	137 W
Supervisor 3 Enhanced (N77-SUP3E)		150 W	110 W
F2 I/O Modules	1 to 4 (can mix types)	—	—
48-port 1- and 10-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F248XP-23E)		500 W	451 W
F3 I/O Modules		—	—
48-port 1- and 10-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F348XP-23)		480 W	450 W
24-port 40-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F324FQ-25)		740 W	650 W
12-port 100-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F312CK-26)		730 W	640 W
F4 I/O Module		—	—
30-port 100-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F430CQ-36)		1000 W	730 W
M3 I/O Modules		—	—
48-port 1- and 10-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-M348XP-23L)		560 W	500 W
24-port 40-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-M324FQ-25L)		750 W	700 W
12-port 100-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-M312CQ-26L)		1095 W	800 W
Fabric Modules (N77-C7706-FAB-2)	3 to 6	80 W	65 W
Fabric Modules (N77-C7706-FAB-3)	3 to 6	85 W	65 W

Component	Quantity	Maximum	Typical
Fan Trays	—	—	—
38 mm Gen 1 Fan Tray (N77-C7706-FAN)	3	300 W	30 W
76 mm Gen 2 Fan Tray (N77-C7706-FAN-2)	3	300 W	30 W

Maximum Power Available for 3-kW AC Power Supplies

The maximum power available for operations depends on the input power from your power source, the number and output capabilities of your power supplies, and the power redundancy mode that you use. The following table lists the amount of power available for 3-kW AC power supplies depending on power inputs, numbers of power supplies, and the mode used.

Power Inputs	Power Supplies	Combined Mode	Power Supply Redundancy Mode	Input Source Redundancy Mode	Full Redundancy Mode
1 input (220 V)	1	3000 W	—	—	—
	2	6000 W	3000 W	3000 W	3000 W
	3	9000 W	6000 W	3000 W	3000 W
	4	12000 W	9000 W	6000 W	6000 W
1 input (110 V)	1	1450 W	—	—	—
	2	2900 W	1450 W	1450 W	1450 W
	3	4350 W	2900 W	1450 W	1450 W
	4	5800 W	4350 W	2900 W	2900 W

Maximum Power Available for 3-kW DC Power Supplies

The maximum power available for operations depends on the input power from your power source, the number and output capabilities of your power supplies, and the power redundancy mode that you use. The following table lists the amount of power available for 3-kW DC power supplies depending on power inputs, numbers of power supplies, and the mode used.

Power Inputs	Power Supplies	Combined Mode	Power Supply Redundancy Mode	Input Source Redundancy Mode	Full Redundancy Mode
1 input	1	3000 W	—	—	—
	2	6000 W	3000 W	3000 W	3000 W
	3	9000 W	6000 W	3000 W	3000 W
	4	12000 W	9000 W	6000 W	6000 W

Maximum Power Available for 3.5-kW Inputs (AC)

The maximum power available for operations depends on the input power from your power source, the number and output capabilities of your power supplies, and the power redundancy mode that you use. The following table lists the amount of power available for 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC power supplies depending on AC power inputs, number of power supplies, and the mode used.

Power Inputs	Power Supplies	Combined Mode	Power Supply Redundancy Mode	Input Source Redundancy Mode	Full Redundancy Mode
1 input (277 V)	1	3500 W	—	—	—
	2	7000 W	3500 W	3500 W	3500 W
	3	10,500 W	7000 W	3500 W	3500 W
	4	14,000 W	10,500 W	7000 W	7000 W
1 input (220/230 V)	1	3500 W	—	—	—
	2	7000 W	3500 W	3500 W	3500 W
	3	10,500 W	7000 W	3500 W	3500 W
	4	14,000 W	10,500 W	7000 W	7000 W
1 input (210 V)	1	3100 W	—	—	—
	2	6200 W	3100 W	3100 W	3100 W
	3	9300 W	6200 W	3100 W	3100 W
	4	12,400 W	9300 W	6200 W	6200 W

Power Inputs	Power Supplies	Combined Mode	Power Supply Redundancy Mode	Input Source Redundancy Mode	Full Redundancy Mode
1 input (110 V)	1	1500 W	—	—	—
	2	3000 W	1500 W	1500 W	1500 W
	3	4500 W	3000 W	1500 W	1500 W
	4	6000 W	4500 W	3000 W	3000 W



Note A combination of 3-kW AC and 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC power supplies can be used.

Maximum Power Available for 3.5-kW Inputs (DC)

The maximum power available for operations depends on the input power from your power source, the number and output capabilities of your power supplies, and the power redundancy mode that you use. The following table lists the amount of power available for 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC power supplies depending on DC power inputs, number of power supplies, and the mode used.

Power Inputs	Power Supplies	Combined Mode	Power Supply Redundancy Mode	Input Source Redundancy Mode	Full Redundancy Mode
1 input (380 V)	1	3,500 W	—	—	—
	2	7,000 W	3,500 W	3,500 W	3,500 W
	3	10,500 W	7,000 W	3,500 W	3,500 W
	4	14,000 W	10,500 W	7,000 W	7,000 W
1 input (220/240 V)	1	3,500 W	—	—	—
	2	7,000 W	3,500 W	3,500 W	3,500 W
	3	10,500 W	7,000 W	3,500 W	3,500 W
	4	14,000 W	10,500 W	7,000 W	7,000 W
1 input (210 V)	1	3,100 W	—	—	—
	2	6,200 W	3,100 W	3,100 W	3,100 W
	3	9,300 W	6,200 W	3,100 W	3,100 W
	4	12,400 W	9,300 W	6,200 W	6,200 W



Note A combination of 3-kW DC and 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC power supplies can be used.

Weights and Quantities for the Chassis, Modules, Fan Trays, and Power Supplies

Component	Weight per Unit	Quantity
Cisco Nexus 7706 Chassis (N77-C7706)	145.0 lb (65.8 kg)	1
Supervisor module (N77-SUP2E)	8.5 lb (3.9 kg)	1 or 2
Supervisor module (N77-SUP3E)	7.7 lb (3.5 kg)	1 or 2
F2 Series I/O Module	—	1 to 4
48-port 1- and 10-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F248XP-23E)	17.0 lb (7.7 kg)	
F3 Series I/O Modules	—	
48-port 1- and 10-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F348XP-23)	17.0 lb (7.7 kg)	
24-port 40-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F324FQ-25)	17.0 lb (7.7 kg)	
12-port 100-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F312CK-26)	21.0 lb (9.5 kg)	
F4 Series I/O Module	—	
30-port 100-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F430CQ-36)	23.14 lb (10.5 kg)	
M3 Series I/O Modules	—	
48-port 1- and 10-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-M348XP-23L)	18.95 lb (8.60 kg)	
24-port 40-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-M324FQ-25L)	18.0 lb (8.16 kg)	3 to 6
12-port 100-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-M312CQ-26L)	22.44 lb (10.18kg)	
Fabric Modules	—	
Fabric-2 module (N77-C7706-FAB-2)	5.6 lb (2.5 kg)	
Fabric-3 module (N77-C7706-FAB-3)	5.6 lb (2.5 kg)	

Component		Weight per Unit	Quantity
Fan Trays		—	3
	38 mm Gen 1 Fan Tray (N77-C7706-FAN)	5.3 lb (3.9 kg)	
	76 mm Gen 2 Fan Tray (N77-C7706-FAN-2)	7.75 lb (3.5 kg)	
Power Supplies		—	1 to 4
	3-kW AC power supply (N77-AC-3KW)	5.0 lb (2.3 kg)	
	3-kW DC power supply (N77-DC-3KW)	11.0 lb (5.0 kg)	
	3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC power supply (N77-HV-3.5KW)	11.0 lb (5.0 kg)	
Optional Components		—	0 or 1
	Front door (N77-C7706-FDK)		

Transceivers, Connectors, and Cables Used with Each I/O Module

Table 5: F3 Series 48-port, 1- and 10-Gigabit Ethernet (N77-F348XP-23) Transceivers and Cables

Port Type	Transceiver or Connector	Cable Type
FET	FET-10G	10-Gigabit Fabric Extender Transceiver (FET) for FEX connections ²

Port Type	Transceiver or Connector	Cable Type
SFP+	SFP-10G-SR	Multi-mode fiber (MMF)
	DWDM-SFP10G-xx.xx	Single-mode fiber (SMF)
	SFP-10G-ER	
	SFP-10G-LR	
	SFP-10G-LRM	
	SFP-10G-ZR	
	SFP-H10GB-CU1M	Twinax cable assembly, passive
	SFP-H10GB-CU1-5M	
	SFP-H10GB-CU2M	
	SFP-H10GB-CU2-5M	
SFP-H10GB-CU3M		
SFP-H10GB-CU5M	Twinax cable assembly, active	
SFP-H10GB-ACU7M		
SFP-H10GB-ACU10M	Active optical cable assembly	
SFP-10G-AOC1M		
SFP-10G-AOC3M		
SFP-10G-AOC5M		
SFP-10G-AOC7M		
SFP-10G-AOC10M		

² FETs are used only when connecting this I/O module to a Fabric Extender (FEX).

Table 6: F3 Series 24-port, 40-Gigabit Ethernet (N77-F324FQ-25) Transceivers and Cables

Port Type	Transceiver or Connector	Cable Type
FET	FET-40G	40-Gigabit Fabric Extender Transceiver (FET) for FEX connections ³

Port Type	Transceiver or Connector	Cable Type
QSFP+	QSFP-40G-CSR4 QSFP-40G-SR4 QSFP-40G-SR-BD	Multi-mode fiber (MMF)
	QSFP-40G-LR4	Single-mode fiber (SMF)
	QSFP-H40G-ACU7M QSFP-H40G-ACU10M	Direct attach copper, active
	QSFP-4X10G-AC7M QSFP-4X10G-AC10M	40GBASE-CR4 QSFP+ to four SFP+ Twinax direct attach copper breakout cable active
	QSFP-H40G-AOC1M QSFP-H40G-AOC2M QSFP-H40G-AOC3M QSFP-H40G-AOC5M QSFP-H40G-AOC7M QSFP-H40G-AOC10M	40GBASE-AOC (Active Optical Cable) QSFP+ cable
	QSFP-4X10G-AOC1M QSFP-4X10G-AOC2M QSFP-4X10G-AOC3M QSFP-4X10G-AOC5M QSFP-4X10G-AOC7M QSFP-4X10G-AOC10M	40GBASE-AOC QSFP+ to four SFP+ breakout cable

³ FETs are used only when connecting this I/O module to a Fabric Extender (FEX).

Table 7: F3 Series 12-port, 100-Gigabit Ethernet (N77-F312CK-26) Transceivers and Cables

Port Type	Transceiver or Connector	Cable Type
CPAK	CPAK-100G-SR10	Multi-mode fiber (MMF)
	CPAK-100G-LR4	Single-mode fiber (SMF)

Table 8: F4 Series 30-port, 100-Gigabit Ethernet (N77-F430CQ-36) Transceivers and Cables

Port Type	Transceiver or Connector	Cable Type
FET	FET-40G	40-Gigabit Fabric Extender Transceiver (FET) for FEX connections

Port Type	Transceiver or Connector	Cable Type
QSFP+ (QSFP28)	QSFP-100G-SR4-S QSFP-40G-CSR4 QSFP-40G-SR4 QSFP-40G-SR4-S	Multi-mode fiber (MMF), supports breakout
	QSFP-40G-SR-BD QSFP-40/100-SRBD	Multi-mode fiber (MMF), no breakout support
	QSFP-100G-CWDM4-S QSFP-100G-PSM4-S QSFP-100G-LR4-S QSFP-40G-ER4 QSFP-40G-LR4 QSFP-4x10G-LR-S	Single-mode fiber (MMF), supports breakout
	QSFP-4X10G-AOC1M QSFP-4X10G-AOC2M QSFP-4X10G-AOC3M QSFP-4X10G-AOC5M QSFP-4X10G-AOC7M QSFP-4X10G-AOC10M	QSFP to four SFP+ active optical breakout cables, supports breakout
		Active optical cable assembly, supports breakout

Port Type	Transceiver or Connector	Cable Type
	QSFP-100G-AOC1M	
	QSFP-100G-AOC2M	
	QSFP-100G-AOC3M	
	QSFP-100G-AOC5M	
	QSFP-100G-AOC7M	
	QSFP-100G-AOC10M	
	QSFP-100G-AOC15M	
	QSFP-100G-AOC20M	
	QSFP-100G-AOC25M	
	QSFP-100G-AOC30M	
	QSFP-H40G-AOC1M	
	QSFP-H40G-AOC2M	
	QSFP-H40G-AOC3M	
	QSFP-H40G-AOC5M	
	QSFP-H40G-AOC7M	
	QSFP-H40G-AOC10M	
	QSFP-H40G-AOC15M	

Table 9: M3 Series 48-port, 1- and 10-Gigabit Ethernet (N77-M348XP-23L) Transceivers and Cables

Port Type	Transceiver or Connector	Cable Type
SFP	GLC-TE	Category 5
	GLC-LH-SMD GLC-SX-MMD	Multi-mode fiber (MMF)
	CWDM-SFP-xxxx Note CWDM-SFP-xxxx is supported only with 1-Gigabit Ethernet I/O modules.	Single-mode fiber (SMF)
	DWDM-SFP-xxxx	
	GLC-BX-U	
	GLC-BX-D	
	GLC-EX-SMD	
GLC-LH-SMD GLC-ZX-SMD		

Port Type	Transceiver or Connector	Cable Type
SFP+	SFP-10G-SR	Multi-mode fiber (MMF)
	DWDM-SFP10G-xx.xx Note DWDM-SFP10G-C is not supported.	Single-mode fiber (SMF)
	SFP-10G-BXD-I	
	SFP-10G-BXU-I	
	SFP-10G-ER	
	SFP-10G-LR	
	SFP-10G-LRM	
	SFP-10G-ZR	
	SFP-H10GB-CU1M SFP-H10GB-CU1-5M SFP-H10GB-CU2M SFP-H10GB-CU2-5M SFP-H10GB-CU3M SFP-H10GB-CU5M	Twinax cable assembly, passive
	SFP-H10GB-ACU7M SFP-H10GB-ACU10M	Twinax cable assembly, active
	SFP-10G-AOC1M SFP-10G-AOC2M SFP-10G-AOC3M SFP-10G-AOC5M SFP-10G-AOC7M SFP-10G-AOC10M	Active optical cable assembly

Table 10: M3 Series 24-port, 40-Gigabit Ethernet (N77-M324FQ-25L) Transceivers and Cables

Port Type	Transceiver or Connector	Cable Type
QSFP+	QSFP-40G-CSR4 QSFP-40G-SR4 QSFP-40G-SR4-S QSFP-40G-SR-BD	Multi-mode fiber (MMF)
	QSFP-40G-ER4 QSFP-40G-LR4 QSFP-40G-LR4-S QSFP-4x10G-LR-S WSP-Q40G-LR4L	Single-mode fiber (SMF)
	QSFP-4X10G-AC7M QSFP-4X10G-AC10M	Direct-attach copper cable assembly
	QSFP-4X10G-AOC1M QSFP-4X10G-AOC2M QSFP-4X10G-AOC3M QSFP-4X10G-AOC5M QSFP-4X10G-AOC7M QSFP-4X10G-AOC10M	Active optical cable assembly
	QSFP-H40G-ACU7M QSFP-H40G-ACU10M	Direct attach copper, active
	QSFP-H40G-AOC1M QSFP-H40G-AOC2M QSFP-H40G-AOC3M QSFP-H40G-AOC5M QSFP-H40G-AOC7M QSFP-H40G-AOC10M QSFP-H40G-AOC15M	Active optical cable assembly

Table 11: M3 Series 12-port, 100-Gigabit Ethernet (N77-M312CQ-26L) Transceivers and Cables

Port Type	Transceiver or Connector	Cable Type
QSFP+ (QSFP28)	QSFP-100G-SR4-S	Multi-mode fiber (MMF)
	QSFP-40G-CSR4	
	QSFP-40G-SR4	
	QSFP-40G-SR4-S	
	QSFP-40/100-SRBD	
	QSFP-40G-SR-BD	
	QSFP-100G-CWDM4-S	Single-mode fiber (SMF)
	QSFP-100G-PSM4-S	
	QSFP-100G-LR4-S	
	QSFP-40G-ER4	
	QSFP-40G-LR4	
	QSFP-4x10G-LR-S	
	QSFP-H40G-ACU7M	Direct attach copper, active
	QSFP-H40G-ACU10M	
QSFP-4X10G-AOC1M	QSFP to four SFP+ active optical breakout cables	
QSFP-4X10G-AOC2M		
QSFP-4X10G-AOC3M		
QSFP-4X10G-AOC5M		
QSFP-4X10G-AOC7M		
QSFP-4X10G-AOC10M		
QSFP-4X10G-AC7M	QSFP to 4 SFP+ copper break-out cables	
QSFP-4X10G-AC10M		
		Active optical cable assembly

Port Type	Transceiver or Connector	Cable Type
	QSFP-100G-AOC1M	
	QSFP-100G-AOC2M	
	QSFP-100G-AOC3M	
	QSFP-100G-AOC5M	
	QSFP-100G-AOC7M	
	QSFP-100G-AOC10M	
	QSFP-100G-AOC15M	
	QSFP-100G-AOC20M	
	QSFP-100G-AOC25M	
	QSFP-100G-AOC30M	
	QSFP-H40G-AOC1M	
	QSFP-H40G-AOC2M	
	QSFP-H40G-AOC3M	
	QSFP-H40G-AOC5M	
	QSFP-H40G-AOC7M	
	QSFP-H40G-AOC10M	
	QSFP-H40G-AOC15M	

100-Gb CPAK Transceiver Specifications

The 100-Gigabit CPAK transceivers are used with the F3-Series 100-Gigabit I/O module (N77-F312CK-26).

For the cable specifications that apply to these transceivers, see the following table.

Transceiver	Cable Type	Connector Type	Wavelength (nm)	Core Size (microns)	Modal Bandwidth (MHz-km)	Maximum Cable Distance
CPAK-100GLR4	SMF	LC Duplex	1310	G.652	—	6.21 miles (10 km)
CPAK-100GSR10	MMF	24-fiber MPO/MTP	850	50.0	2000 (OM3)	328 feet (100 m)
				50.0	4700 (OM4)	492 feet (150 m)

For the environmental specifications, see the following table.

Parameter	Specification
Storage temperature	−40 to 158°F (−40 to 70°C)
Operating temperature	32 to 104°F (0 to 40°C)
Storage relative humidity	5 to 95 percent, noncondensing
Operating relative humidity	5 to 90 percent, noncondensing

100-Gb QSFP+ Transceiver Specifications



Note The 100-Gigabit QSFP+ transceivers are used with the M3-Series 100-Gigabit I/O module (N77-M312CQ-26L) and the F4-Series 100-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F430CQ-36). These I/O modules support Forward Error Correction (FEC) with the 100-Gigabit QSFP+ transceivers. For more information, refer [FEC Support on Optic Modules](#).

For the cable specifications that apply to these transceivers, see the following table.

Transceiver	Cable Type	Connector Type	Wavelength (nm)	Core Size (microns)	Modal Bandwidth (MHz-km)	Maximum Cable Distance
QSFP-100G-SR4-S	MMF	12-fiber MPO	850	50.0 50.0	2000 (OM3) 4700 (OM4)	230 feet (70 m) over OM3 Multimode Fiber 328 feet (100 m) over OM4 Multimode Fiber
QSFP-100G-LR4-S	SMF	LC Duplex	1295, 1300, 1304, 1309	G.652	—	6.21 miles (10 km)
QSFP-100G-CWDM4-S	SMF	LC Duplex	1271, 1291, 1311, 1331	G.652	—	1.24 miles (2 km)
QSFP-100G-PSM4-S	SMF	12-fiber MPO	1310	G.652	—	1640 feet (500 m)
QSFP-100G-AOCxM	Active optical cable	QSFP+ to QSFP+	—	—	—	3.3 feet (1 m) 6.6 feet (2 m) 9.8 feet (3 m) 16.4 feet (5 m) 23 feet (7 m) 33 feet (10 m) 49.4 feet (15 m) 65.6 feet (20 m) 82 feet (25 m) 98.4 feet (30 m)
QSFP-40/100-SRBD	MMF	LC	855, 908	50.0 50.0	2000 (OM3) 4700 (OM4)	230 feet (70 m) 328 feet (100m)

For the optical specifications, see the following table.

Table 12:

Transceiver	Transceiver Type	Transmit Power (dBm)	Receive Power (dBm)	Transmit and Receive Wavelength (nm)
QSFP-100G-SR4-S	QSFP+	2.4 (maximum per lane) -8.4 (minimum per lane)	2.4 (maximum per lane) -5.2 (minimum per lane)	840 to 860 nm
QSFP-100G-LR4-S	QSFP+	4.5 (maximum per lane) -4.3 (minimum per lane)	4.5 (maximum per lane) -8.6 (minimum per lane)	Four lanes: 1295, 1300, 1304, 1309
QSFP-100G-CWDM4-S	QSFP+	2.5 (maximum per lane) -6.5 (minimum per lane)	2.5 (maximum per lane) -10 (minimum per lane)	Four lanes: 1271, 1291, 1311, 1331
QSFP-100G-PSM4-S	QSFP+	2.9 (maximum per lane) -9.4 (minimum per lane)	2 (maximum per lane) -26 (minimum per lane)	1295 to 1325
QSFP-40/100G-SRBD	QSFP+	+4 (100G), +5 (40G) (maximum per lane) -6 (100G), -4 (40G) (minimum per lane)	4 (100G), 5 (40G) (maximum per lane) -7.9 (100G), -6 (40G) (minimum per lane)	855, 908

For the environmental specifications, see the following table.

Parameter	Specification
Storage temperature	-40 to 185°F (-40 to 85°C)
Operating temperature	32 to 158°F (0 to 70°C)
Case temperature	-40 to 158°F (-40 to 70°C)
Storage relative humidity	5 to 95 percent

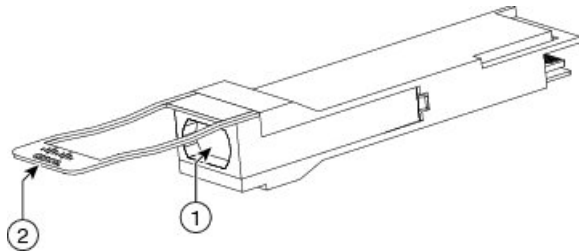
40-Gb QSFP+ Transceiver Specifications



Note The 40-Gigabit QSFP+ transceivers are used with the F3-Series 40-Gigabit I/O modules (N77-F324FQ-25), F4-Series 100-Gigabit I/O modules (N77-F430CQ-36), M3-Series 40-Gigabit I/O modules (N77-M324FQ-25L), and the M3-Series 100-Gigabit I/O modules (N77-M312CQ-26L).

The following figure identifies the major features of these transceivers.

Figure 35:



1	Optical bore	2	Pull tab
---	--------------	---	----------

For the cable specifications that apply to these transceivers, see the following table.

Transceiver	Cable Type	Connector Type	Wavelength (nm)	Core Size (microns)	Modal Bandwidth (MHz-km)	Maximum Cable Distance
FET-40G Note FET-40G is not supported with N77-M324FQ-25L and N77-M312CQ-26L.	MMF	QSFP+ to QSFP+	850	50.0 50.0 50.0	500 2000 4700	98 feet (30 m) 328 feet (100 m) 328 feet (100 m)
QSFP-H40G-ACUxM	Direct attach copper, active	QSFP+ to QSFP+	—	—	—	23 feet (7 m) 33 feet (10 m)
QSFP-H40G-AOCxM	Active optical cable	QSFP+ to QSFP+	—	—	—	3.3 feet (1 m) 6.6 feet (2 m) 9.8 feet (3 m) 16.4 feet (5 m) 23 feet (7 m) 33 feet (10 m) 49.4 feet (15 m)

Transceiver	Cable Type	Connector Type	Wavelength (nm)	Core Size (microns)	Modal Bandwidth (MHz-km)	Maximum Cable Distance
QSFP-40G-CSR4	MMF	12-fiber MTP/MPO	850	62.5	200	108 feet (33 m)
				50.0	500	269 feet (82 m)
				50.0	2000	984 feet (300 m)
				50.0	4700	1312 feet (400 m)
QSFP-40G-ER4	SMF	LC	1310	G.652	—	40 km ⁴
QSFP-40G-LR4	SMF	LC Duplex	1310	G.652	—	6.21 miles (10 km)
QSFP-40G-SR4	MMF	PC or UPC	850	50.0	500 (OM2)	98 feet (30 m)
				50.0	2000 (OM3)	328 feet (100 m)
				50.0	4700 (OM4)	492 feet (150 m)
QSFP-4X10G-AOCxM	Active optical cable assembly	QSFP to four SFP+	-	-	-	3 feet (1 m)
						6.5 feet (2 m)
						9.8 feet (3 m)
						16.4 feet (5 m)
						23 feet (7 m)
33 feet (10 m)						
QSFP-4X10G-ACxM	Direct-attach copper cable assembly	QSFP to four SFP+	-	-	-	23 feet (7 m)
						33 feet (10 m)
QSFP-4X10G-LR-S	SMF	MPO-12	1310	G.652	-	10 km
QSFP-40G-SR-BD	MMF	LC Duplex	850/900	50.0	500 (OM2)	98 feet (30 m)
				50.0	2000 (OM3)	328 feet (100 m)
				50.0	4700 (OM4)	328 feet (100 m)
WSP-Q40G-LR4L	SMF	LC	1310	G.652	—	1.24 miles (2 km)

For the optical specifications, see the following table.

Transceiver	Transceiver Type	Transmit Power (dBm)	Receive Power (dBm)	Transmit and Receive Wavelength (nm)
QSFP-40G-CSR4	40GBASE-CSR4	0 (maximum per lane) -7.3 (minimum per lane)	0 (maximum per lane) -9.9 (minimum per lane)	840 to 860

Transceiver	Transceiver Type	Transmit Power (dBm)	Receive Power (dBm)	Transmit and Receive Wavelength (nm)
QSFP-40G-ER4	40GBASE-ER4	4.5 (maximum per lane) -2.7 (minimum per lane)	-4.5 (maximum per lane) -21.2 (minimum per lane)	Four lanes: 1271, 1291, 1311, 1331
QSFP-40G-LR4	40GBASE-LR4	2.3 (maximum per lane) -7 (minimum per lane)	2.3 (maximum per lane) -13.7 (minimum per lane)	Four lanes: 1271, 1291, 1311, 1331
QSFP-40G-SR4	40GBASE-SR4	-1.0 (maximum per lane*6) -7.6 (minimum per lane)	2.4 (maximum per lane) -9.5 (minimum per lane)	840 to 860 nm
QSFP-4X10G-LR-S	4x10GBASE-LR	0.5 (maximum per lane) -8.2 (minimum per lane)	0.5 (maximum per lane) -14.4 (minimum per lane)	1260 to 1355
QSFP-40G-SR-BD	40GBASE-SR-BiDi	5 (maximum per lane) -4 (minimum per lane)	5 (maximum per lane) -6 (minimum per lane)	832 to 918
WSP-Q40G-LR4L	40GBASE-LR4-Lite	2.3 (maximum per lane) -10 (minimum per lane)	2.3 (maximum per lane) -13.7 (minimum per lane)	Four lanes: 1271, 1291, 1311, 1331

For the environmental specifications, see the following table.

Parameter	Specification
Storage temperature	-40 to 185°F (-40 to 85°C)
Operating temperature	32 to 104°F (0 to 40°C)
Case temperature	-40 to 158°F (-40 to 70°C)
Storage relative humidity	5 to 95 percent

10-Gb SFP+ Optical Transceivers and Fabric Extender Transceivers

The following table indicates which 10-Gigabit SFP+ transceivers are used with the 10-Gigabit Ethernet (GE) I/O modules:

Transceiver	F2 Series 48-Port 1-/10-GE (N77-F248XP-23E)	F3 Series 48-port 1-/10-GE (N77-F348XP-23)	M3 Series 48-port 1-/10-GE (N77-M348XP-23L)
CWDM-SFP10G-xxxx	—	—	—
DWDM-SFP10G-xx.xx	X Note DWDM-SFP10G is not supported.	X Note DWDM-SFP10G is not supported.	X Note DWDM-SFP10G-C is not supported.
FET-10G	X	X	—
SFP-H10GB-CUxM	X	X	X
SFP-H10GB-ACUxM	X	X	X
SFP-10G-AOCxM	X	X	X
SFP-10G-BXD-I	—	X	X
SFP-10G-BXU-I	—	X	X
SFP-10G-ER	—	X	X
SFP-10G-LR	X	X	X
SFP-10G-LRM	X	X	X
SFP-10G-SR	X	X	X
SFP-10G-ZR	—	X	X

You can use the SFP-10G-SR, SFP-10G-LR, and the 10-Gigabit Fabric Extender Transceiver (FET) to connect the following I/O modules to Fabric Extenders (FEXs):

- F3 Series 48-port, 1- and 10-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F348XP-23)

On the other end of the connections using the SFP-10G-SR, SFP-10G-LR, and FET transceivers, you can connect to the following FEXs:

- Cisco Nexus 2248TP FEX
- Cisco Nexus 2248TP-E FEX
- Cisco Nexus 2248PQ-E FEX
- Cisco Nexus 2232TM-E FEX
- Cisco Nexus 2232TM FEX
- Cisco Nexus 2232PP FEX

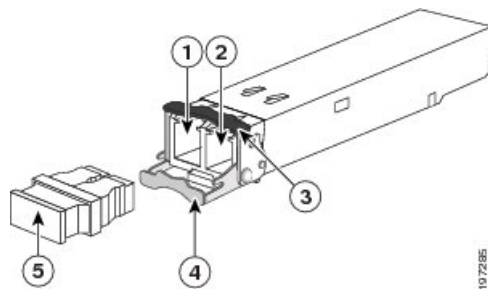
Using the QSFP-40G-SR4, QSFP-40G-LR4, and FET transceivers, you can connect the F3 Series 24-port 40-Gigabit Ethernet I/O module (N77-F324FQ-25) to the following FEXs:

- Cisco Nexus 2348TQ-10GE

- Cisco Nexus 2348UPQ
- Cisco Nexus B22IBM

The following figure identifies the major features of these transceivers.

Figure 36:



1	Receive optical bore	4	Clasp shown in open position
2	Transmit optical bore	5	Dust plug
3	Clasp shown in closed position		

For the cable specifications that apply to the supported transceivers, see the following table. For information about the DWDM transceivers, see [10BASE-DWDM SFP+ Transceiver Specifications, on page 156](#)

Transceiver	Cable Type	Connector Type	Wavelength (nm)	Core Size (microns)	Modal Bandwidth (MHz-km)	Maximum Cable Distance
FET-10G	MMF	Dual LC/PC	850	50.0 50.0	500 2000	82 feet (25 m) 328 feet (100 m)
SFP-H10GB-CUxM	Twinax cable, passive, 30-AWG cable assembly	—	—	—	—	3.3 feet (1 m) 4.9 feet (1.5 m) 6.6 feet (2 m) 8.2 feet (2.5 m) 9.8 feet (3 m) 16.4 feet (5 m)
SFP-H10GB-ACUxM	Twinax cable, active, 30-AWG cable assembly	—	—	—	—	22.8 feet (7 m) 32.5 feet (10 m)

Transceiver	Cable Type	Connector Type	Wavelength (nm)	Core Size (microns)	Modal Bandwidth (MHz-km)	Maximum Cable Distance
SFP-10G-AOCxM	Active optical cable assembly	—	—	—	—	3.3 feet (1 m) 6.6 feet (2 m) 9.8 feet (3 m) 16.4 feet (5 m) 22.8 feet (7 m) 32.5 feet (10 m)
SFP-10G-BXD-I	SMF	—	1330	G.652	—	6.2 miles (10 km)
SFP-10G-BXU-I	SMF	—	1270	G.652	—	6.2 miles (10 km)
SFP-10G-ER	SMF	Dual LC/PC	1550	G.652 fiber	—	24.9 miles (40 km)
SFP-10G-LR	SMF	Dual LC/PC	1310	G.652 fiber	—	6.2 miles (10 km)
SFP-10G-LRM	SMF	Dual LC/PC	1310	G.652	—	984 feet (300 m)
SFP-10G-SR	MMF	Dual LC/PC	850	62.5 62.5 50 50 50	160 200 400 500 2000	85 feet (26 m) 108 feet (33 m) 216 feet (66 m) 269 feet (82 m) 984 feet (300 m)
SFP-10G-ZR	SMF		1550	G.652	—	49.7 miles (80 km)

For the optical specifications, see the following table.

Transceiver	Transceiver Type	Transmit Power (dBm)	Receive Power (dBm)	Transmit and Receive Wavelength (nm)
SFP-10G-ER	10GBASE-ER, 1550-nm SMF	4.0 (maximum per lane) -4.7 (minimum per lane)	-1.0 (maximum per lane) -15.8 (minimum per lane)	1530 to 1565 nm
SFP-10G-LR	10GBASE-LR, 1310-nm SMF	0.5 (maximum per lane) -8.2 (minimum per lane)	0.5 (maximum per lane) -14.4 (minimum per lane)	1260 to 1355 nm

Transceiver	Transceiver Type	Transmit Power (dBm)	Receive Power (dBm)	Transmit and Receive Wavelength (nm)
SFP-10G-LRM	10GBASE-LRM, 1310-nm SMF	0.5 (maximum per lane) -6.5 (minimum per lane)	0.5 (maximum per lane) -8.4 (minimum per lane) (in average) -6.4 (minimum per lane) (in OMA) ⁴	1260 to 1355 nm
SFP-10G-SR	10GBASE-SR, 850-nm MMF	-1.2 (maximum per lane) ⁵ -7.3 (minimum per lane)	0.5 (maximum per lane) -8.2 (minimum per lane)	840 to 860 nm

⁴ Both the average and the OMA specifications must be met simultaneously.

⁵ The launch power shall be the lesser of the class 1 safety limit or the maximum receive power. Class 1 laser requirements are defined by IEC 60825-1:2001.

For the environmental specifications, see the following table.

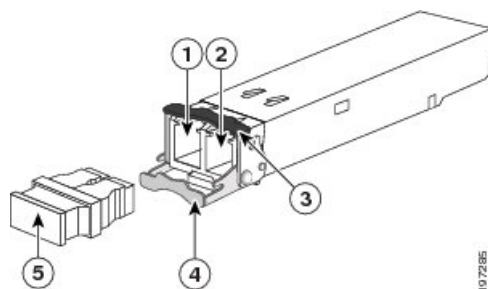
Parameter	Specification
Storage temperature	-40 to 185°F (-40 to 85°C)
Operating temperature	32 to 158°F (0 to 70°C)
Case temperature	-40 to 158°F (-40 to 70°C)
Module supply voltage	3.1 to 3.5 V

10GBASE-DWDM SFP+ Transceiver Specifications

The Dense Wavelength Division Multiplexing (DWDM) SFP+ transceivers are part of a DWDM optical network to provide high-capacity bandwidth across a fiber-optic network. There are 32 fixed-wavelength DWDM SFP+ transceivers that support the International Telecommunications Union (ITU) 100-GHz wavelength grid. These transceivers have duplex SC connectors. DWDM SFP+ transceivers can transmit and receive optical signals up to 50 miles (80 km) depending on the quality of the fiber-optic cable used.

DWDM SFP+ transceivers look like the typical 10GBASE-X SFP+ transceivers as shown in the following figure.

Figure 37:



1	Receive optical bore	4	Clasp shown in open position
2	Transmit optical bore	5	Dust plug
3	Clasp shown in closed position		

For the Cisco DWDM SFP+ transceiver cable specifications, see the following table.

Transceiver Type	Cable Type	Connector Type	Wavelength (nm)	ITU Channel
	SMF ⁶	Dual LC/PC connector	1530.33, 1531.12, 1531.90, 1532.68, 1533.46, 1534.25, 1535.04, 1535.82, 1536.61, 1537.39, 1538.19, 1538.98, 1539.77, 1540.56, 1542.14, 1542.94, 1543.73, 1544.53, 1546.12, 1546.92, 1547.72, 1548.51, 1549.31, 1550.12, 1550.92, 1551.72, 1552.52, 1554.13, 1554.94, 1555.75, 1556.55, 1558.17, 1558.98, 1559.79, 1560.61, 1561.41	

Transceiver Type	Cable Type	Connector Type	Wavelength (nm)	ITU Channel
DWDM-SFP10G-30.33				59
DWDM-SFP10G-31.12				58
DWDM-SFP10G-31.90				57
DWDM-SFP10G-32.68				56
DWDM-SFP10G-33.47				55
DWDM-SFP10G-34.25				54
DWDM-SFP10G-35.04				53
DWDM-SFP10G-35.82				52
DWDM-SFP10G-36.61				51
DWDM-SFP10G-37.40				50
DWDM-SFP10G-38.19				49
DWDM-SFP10G-38.98				48
DWDM-SFP10G-39.77				47
DWDM-SFP10G-40.56				46
DWDM-SFP10G-41.35				45
DWDM-SFP10G-42.14				44
DWDM-SFP10G-42.94				43
DWDM-SFP10G-43.73				42
DWDM-SFP10G-44.53				41
DWDM-SFP10G-45.32				40
DWDM-SFP10G-46.12				39
DWDM-SFP10G-46.92				38
DWDM-SFP10G-47.72				37
DWDM-SFP10G-48.51				36
DWDM-SFP10G-49.32				35
DWDM-SFP10G-50.12				34
DWDM-SFP10G-50.92				33
DWDM-SFP10G-51.72				32
DWDM-SFP10G-52.52				31
DWDM-SFP10G-53.33				30
DWDM-SFP10G-54.13				29
DWDM-SFP10G-54.94				28
DWDM-SFP10G-55.75				27

Transceiver Type	Cable Type	Connector Type	Wavelength (nm)	ITU Channel
DWDM-SFP10G-56.55				26
DWDM-SFP10G-57.36				25
DWDM-SFP10G-58.17				24
DWDM-SFP10G-58.98				23
DWDM-SFP10G-59.79				22
DWDM-SFP10G-60.61				21
DWDM-SFP10G-61.41				20

⁶ Single-mode fiber optic (SMF)

For the specifications that differentiate the 10GBASE-DWDM SFP+ transceivers, see the [10-Gigabit Ethernet Transceiver Modules Compatibility Matrix](#).

1-Gb SFP Transceivers

The following table indicates which 1-Gigabit SFP transceivers can be used with the 1-Gigabit Ethernet (GE) I/O modules:

Transceiver	F2 Series 48-Port 1-/10-GE (N77-F248XP-23E)	F3 Series 48-port 1-/10-GE (N77-F348XP-23)	M3 Series 48-port 1-/10-GE (N77-M348XP-23L)
CWDM-SFP-xxxx	X	X	X
DWDM-SFP-xxxx	X	X	X
GLC-BX-D	X	X	X
GLC-BX-U	X	X	X
GLC-EX-SMD	X	X	X
GLC-LH-SMD	X	X	X
GLC-SX-MMD	X	X	X
GLC-T	X	X	X
GLC-ZX-SMD	X	X	X
SFP-GE-T	X	X	X

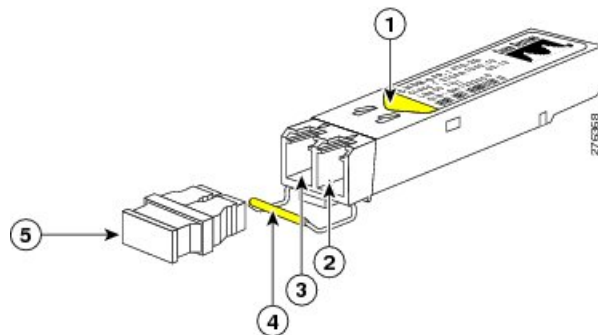
1000BASE-CWDM SFP Transceiver Cables

The Coarse Wavelength Division Multiplexing (CWDM) SFP transceivers are hot-swappable transceivers that you plug into SFP-compatible I/O modules. The CWDM SFP transceiver uses an LC optical connector to connect to a single-mode fiber-optic (SMF) cable. You can connect the CWDM SFPs to CWDM passive optical system optical add/drop multiplexer (OADM) modules or multiplexer/demultiplexer plug-in modules

using SMF cables. CWDM SFP transceivers can transmit and receive optical signals up to 61 miles (100 km) depending on the quality of the fiber-optic cable used.

CWDM SFP transceivers are color coded to indicate their designated optical wavelength. The following figure shows the CWDM transceiver, which looks like a standard 1000BASE-X SFP transceiver with a colored arrow and bail clasp to indicate the designated wavelength.

Figure 38: CWDM SFP Transceiver (Yellow Color Code)



1	Colored arrow on label specifies the wavelength	4	Bail clasp
2	Receive optical bore	5	Dust plug
3	Transmit optical bore		

Whenever the transceiver receive optical bores are not filled with optical cables, you should minimize the chance of contamination by plugging the transceiver with its dust plug.

For the Cisco CWDM SFP transceiver cable specifications, see the following table.

Transceiver Type	Cable Type	Connector Type	Wavelength (nm)	Core Size (microns)	Modal Bandwidth (MHz-km)	Maximum Cable Distance
CWDM-SFP-1470 CWDM-SFP-1490 CWDM-SFP-1510 CWDM-SFP-1530 CWDM-SFP-1550 CWDM-SFP-1570 CWDM-SFP-1590 CWDM-SFP-1610	SMF ⁷	Dual LC/PC connector	1470, 1490, 1510, 1530, 1550, 1570, 1590, 1610	G.652 ⁸	—	62 miles (100 km)

⁷ Single-mode fiber optic (SMF)

⁸ ITU-T G652 SMF as specified by the IEEE 802.32 standard.

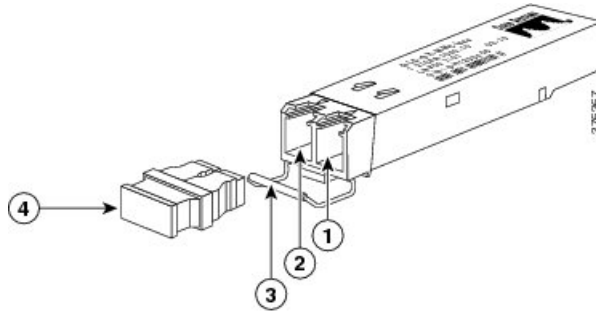
For the specifications that differentiate the 1000BASE-CWDM SFP transceivers, see the [Cisco Gigabit Ethernet Transceiver Modules Compatibility Matrix](#). For specifications and installation information that apply to all CWDM SFP transceivers, see the [Cisco SFP and SFP+ Transceiver Module Installation Notes](#).

1000BASE-DWDM SFP Transceiver Specifications

The Dense Wavelength Division Multiplexing (DWDM) SFP transceivers are part of a DWDM optical network to provide high-capacity bandwidth across a fiber-optic network. There are 40 fixed-wavelength DWDM SFP transceivers that support the International Telecommunications Union (ITU) 100-GHz wavelength grid. These transceivers have duplex SC connectors. DWDM SFP transceivers can transmit and receive optical signals up to 50 miles (80 km) depending on the quality of the fiber-optic cable used.

DWDM SFP transceivers look like the typical 1000BASE-X transceivers as shown in the following figure.

Figure 39: 1000BASE-DWDM SFP Transceiver



1	Receive optical bore	3	Bail clasp
2	Transmit optical bore	4	Dust plug

For the Cisco DWDM SFP transceiver cable specifications, see the following table.

Transceiver Type	Cable Type	Connector Type	Wavelength (nm)	ITU Channel
DWDM-SFP-3033	SMF ⁹	Dual LC/PC connector	1530.33, 1531.12,	59
DWDM-SFP-3112			1531.90, 1532.68,	58
DWDM-SFP-3190			1534.25, 1535.04,	57
DWDM-SFP-3268			1535.82, 1536.61,	56
DWDM-SFP-3425			1537.39, 1538.19,	54
DWDM-SFP-3504			1539.98, 1539.77,	53
DWDM-SFP-3582			1540.56, 1542.14,	52
DWDM-SFP-3661			1542.94, 1543.73,	51
DWDM-SFP-3819			1544.53, 1546.12,	49
DWDM-SFP-3998			1546.92, 1547.72,	48
DWDM-SFP-3977			1548.51, 1550.12,	47
DWDM-SFP-4056			1550.92, 1551.72,	46
DWDM-SFP-4214			1552.52, 1554.13,	44
DWDM-SFP-4294			1554.94, 1555.75,	43
DWDM-SFP-4373			1556.55, 1558.17,	42
DWDM-SFP-4453			1558.98, 1559.79,	41
DWDM-SFP-4612			1560.61	39
DWDM-SFP-4692				38
DWDM-SFP-4772				37
DWDM-SFP-4851				36
DWDM-SFP-5012				34
DWDM-SFP-5092				33
DWDM-SFP-5172				32
DWDM-SFP-5252				31
DWDM-SFP-5413				29
DWDM-SFP-5494				28
DWDM-SFP-5575				27
DWDM-SFP-5655				26
DWDM-SFP-5817				24
DWDM-SFP-5898				23
DWDM-SFP-5979		22		
DWDM-SFP-6061		21		

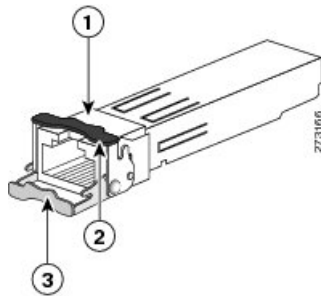
⁹ Single-mode fiber optic (SMF)

For the specifications that differentiate the 1000BASE-DWDM SFP transceivers, see the [Cisco Gigabit Ethernet Transceiver Modules Compatibility Matrix](#). For specifications and installation information that apply to all CWDM SFP transceivers, see the [Cisco SFP and SFP+ Transceiver Module Installation Notes](#).

1000BASE-T and 1000BASE-X SFP Transceiver Specifications

The 1000BASE-T and 1000BASE-X SFPs are hot-swappable transceivers that you plug into SFP-compatible I/O modules. The 1000BASE-T transceiver, shown in the following figure, provides an RJ-45 connection for copper cables.

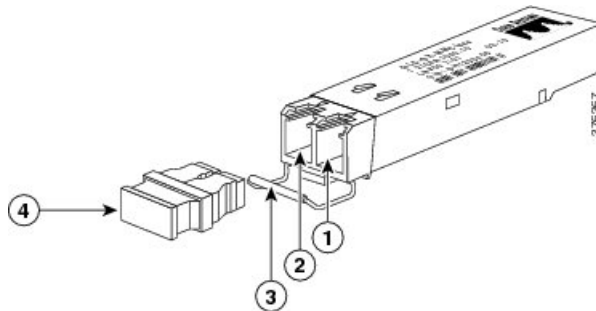
Figure 40: 1000BASE-T SFP Transceiver



1	RJ-45 connector	3	Bail clasp shown in the open (unlocked) position
2	Bail clasp shown in the closed (locked) position		

The 1000BASE-X transceiver, shown in the following figure, provides an optical connection for fiber-optic cables.

Figure 41: 1000BASE-X SFP Transceiver



1	Receive optical bore	3	Bail clasp
2	Transmit optical bore	4	Dust plug

For the 1000BASE-T and 1000BASE-X transceiver cable specifications, see the following table.

Transceiver Type	Cable Type	Connector Type	Wavelength (nm)	Core Size (microns)	Modal Bandwidth (MHz-km)	Maximum Cable Distance
1000BASE-BX10 (GLC-BX-U)	SMF ¹⁰	Single LC/PC	1310	G.652 ¹¹	—	6.2 miles (10 km)

Transceiver Type	Cable Type	Connector Type	Wavelength (nm)	Core Size (microns)	Modal Bandwidth (MHz-km)	Maximum Cable Distance
1000BASE-BX10 (GLC-BX-D)	SMF ¹	Single LC/PC	1490	G.652 ²	—	6.2 miles (10 km)
1000BASE-SX (GLC-SX-MMD)	MMF ¹²	LC duplex	850	62.5	160	722 feet (220 m)
				62.5	200	902 feet (275 m)
				50.0	400	1640 feet (500 m)
				50.0	500	1804 feet (550 m)
1000BASE-LX (GLC-LH-SMD)	MMF ³	LC duplex	1310	62.5	500	1804 feet (550 m) ¹³
				50.0	400	1804 feet (550 m) ⁴
				50.0	500	1804 feet (550 m) ⁴
	SMF ¹	LC duplex	1310	G.652 ²	—	6.2 miles (10 km)
1000BASE-ZX (GLC-ZX-SMD)	SMF ¹	LC duplex	1550	G.652 ²	—	Approximately 43.4 to 60 miles (70 to 100 km) depending on link loss
1000BASE-T (GLC-T and SFP-GE-T)	Category 5, 5E, or 6 UTP/FTP	RJ-45	—	—	—	328 feet (100 meters)

¹⁰ Single-mode fiber optic (SMF)

¹¹ ITU-T G652 SMF as specified by the IEEE 802.32 standard.

¹² Multimode fiber optic (MMF)

¹³ You must use a mode-conditioning patch cord, as specified by the IEEE standard, regardless of the amount of span.

The transceivers that support Digital Optical Monitoring have a greater range of temperatures for operations, as shown in the following table.

Transceiver Type	Part Number	Digital Optical Monitoring Support	Operating Temperature	Storage Temperature
1000BASE-SX	GLC-SX-MMD	Yes	EXT ¹⁴	-40 to 185°F (-40 to 85°C)
1000BASE-LX	GLC-LH-SMD	Yes	EXT ⁵	
1000BASE-ZX	GLC-ZX-SMD	No	COM ⁶	
1000BASE-T	GLC-T	—	COM ⁶	
	SFP-GE-T	—	EXT ⁵	

¹⁴ Extended (EXT) temperature range is 23 to 185°F (-5 to 85°C)

RJ-45 Module Connectors

The RJ-45 connector connects Category 3, Category 5, Category 5e, Category 6, or Category 6A foil twisted-pair or unshielded twisted-pair cable from the external network to the following module interface connectors:

- Supervisor modules
 - CONSOLE port
 - MGMT ETH port
- Fabric Extenders (Cisco Nexus 2232PP, 2232TM, 2232TM-E, 2248PQ, 2248TP, and 2248TP-E FEXs)

- 100/1000 downlink ports

Cisco Nexus C2348UPQ FEX

- 1000/10000 downlink ports

Cisco Nexus C2348TQ-10GE FEX

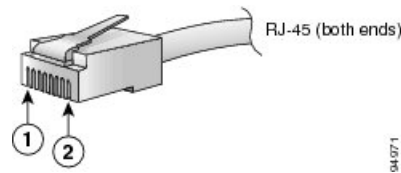
- 100/1000/10000 downlink ports



Caution To comply with GR-1089 intrabuilding, lightning immunity requirements, you must use a foil twisted-pair (FTP) cable that is properly grounded at both ends.

The following figure shows the RJ-45 connector.

Figure 42: RJ-45 Connector



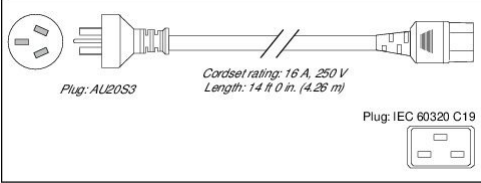
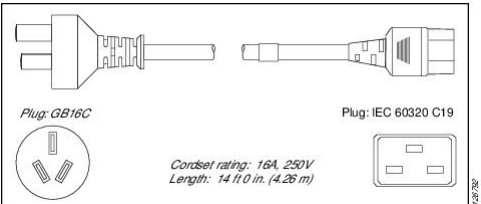
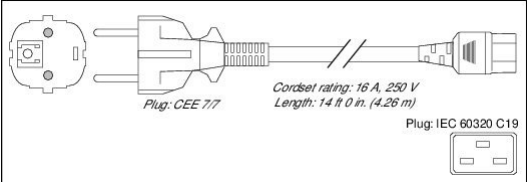
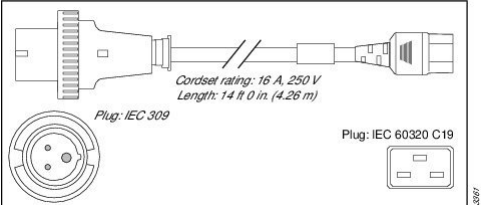
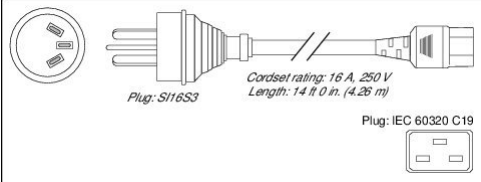
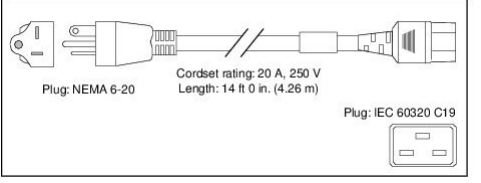
1	Pin 1	2	Pin 2
---	-------	---	-------

Power Supply Cable Specifications

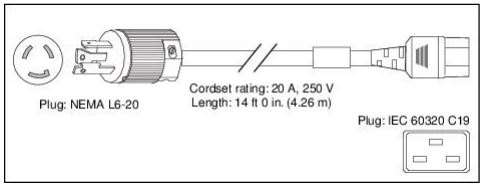
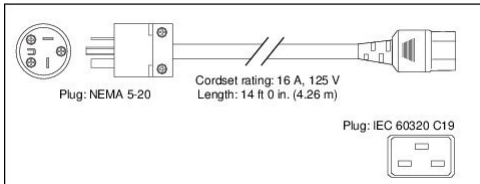
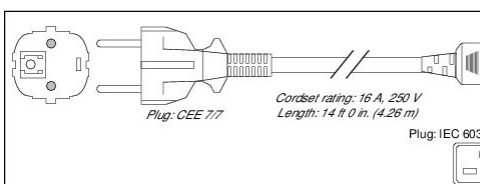
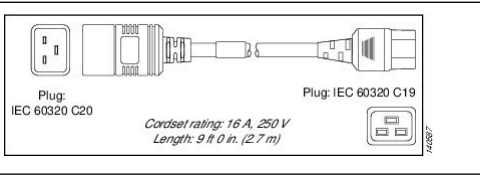
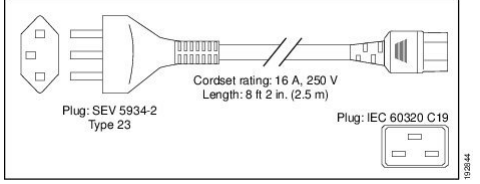


Note If you do not order the optional power cord with the system, you are responsible for selecting the appropriate power cord for the product. Using a non-compatible power cord with this product may result in electrical safety hazard. Orders delivered to Argentina, Brazil, and Japan must have the appropriate power cord ordered with the system.

3-kW AC Power Cord Specifications

Locale	Power Cord Part Number	Cord Set Rating	Power Cord Illustration
Australia and New Zealand	CAB-AC-16A-AUS	16A, 250 VAC	 <p>Plug: AU20S3</p> <p>Cordset rating: 16 A, 250 V Length: 14 ft 0 in. (4.26 m)</p> <p>Plug: IEC 60320 C19</p>
Peoples Republic of China	CAB-AC-16A-CH	16A, 250 VAC	 <p>Plug: GB16C</p> <p>Cordset rating: 16 A, 250 V Length: 14 ft 0 in. (4.26 m)</p> <p>Plug: IEC 60320 C19</p>
Continental Europe	CAB-AC-2500W-EU	16A, 250 VAC	 <p>Plug: CEE 7/7</p> <p>Cordset rating: 16 A, 250 V Length: 14 ft 0 in. (4.26 m)</p> <p>Plug: IEC 60320 C19</p>
International	CAB-AC-2500W-INT	16A, 250 VAC	 <p>Plug: IEC 309</p> <p>Cordset rating: 16 A, 250 V Length: 14 ft 0 in. (4.26 m)</p> <p>Plug: IEC 60320 C19</p>
Israel	CAB-AC-2500W-ISRL	16A, 250 VAC	 <p>Plug: SI16S3</p> <p>Cordset rating: 16 A, 250 V Length: 14 ft 0 in. (4.26 m)</p> <p>Plug: IEC 60320 C19</p>
Japan and North America (non locking) 200-240 VAC operation	CAB-9K16A-US1	16A, 250 VAC	 <p>Plug: NEMA 6-20</p> <p>Cordset rating: 20 A, 250 V Length: 14 ft 0 in. (4.26 m)</p> <p>Plug: IEC 60320 C19</p>

3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply AC Power Cord Specifications

Locale	Power Cord Part Number	Cord Set Rating	Power Cord Illustration
Japan and North America (locking) 200-240 VAC operation	CAB-AC-16A-TWLK	16A, 250 VAC	 <p>Plug: NEMA L6-20 Cordset rating: 20 A, 250 V Length: 14 ft 0 in. (4.26 m) Plug: IEC 60320 C19</p>
Japan and North America 100-120 VAC operation	CAB-7513AC	16A, 250 VAC	 <p>Plug: NEMA 5-20 Cordset rating: 16 A, 125 V Length: 14 ft 0 in. (4.26 m) Plug: IEC 60320 C19</p>
Korea	CAB-9K16A-KOR	16A, 250 VAC	 <p>Plug: CEE 7/7 Cordset rating: 16 A, 250 V Length: 14 ft 0 in. (4.26 m) Plug: IEC 60320 C19</p>
Power distribution unit (PDU)	CAB-C19-CBN	16A, 250 VAC	 <p>Plug: IEC 60320 C20 Cordset rating: 16 A, 250 V Length: 9 ft 0 in. (2.7 m) Plug: IEC 60320 C19</p>
Switzerland	CAB-ACS-16	16A, 250 VAC	 <p>Plug: SEV 5934-2 Type 23 Cordset rating: 16 A, 250 V Length: 8 ft 2 in. (2.5 m) Plug: IEC 60320 C19</p>

3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply AC Power Cord Specifications

Locale and Description	PID	Cisco Part Number (CPN)	Length	Cord Set Rating	Power Cord Illustration
Argentina, IRSM 2073/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-AC-16A-SG-AR	37-1649-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	16A, 250 VAC	Figure 43: CAB-AC-16A-SG-AR Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 172

Locale and Description	PID	Cisco Part Number (CPN)	Length	Cord Set Rating	Power Cord Illustration
Australia and New Zealand, AU20LS3/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-AC-16A-SG-AZ	37-1661-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	16A, 250 VAC	Figure 44: CAB-AC-16A-SG-AZ Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 173
Brazil, EL224/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-AC-16A-SG-BR	37-1650-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	16A, 250 VAC	Figure 45: CAB-AC-16A-SG-BR Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 173
Peoples Republic of China, GB 16C/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-AC-16A-SG-CH	37-1655-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	16A, 250 VAC	Figure 46: CAB-AC-16A-SG-CH Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 173
Continental Europe, CEE 7-7/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-AC-16A-SG-EU	37-1660-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	16A, 250 VAC	Figure 47: CAB-AC-16A-SG-EU Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 173
India, SABS 164-1/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-AC-16A-SG-IND	37-1648-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	16A, 250 VAC	Figure 48: CAB-AC-16A-SG-IND Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 174
International, IEC60309/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-AC-16A-SG-IN	37-1659-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	16A, 250 VAC	Figure 49: CAB-AC-16A-SG-IN Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 174

Locale and Description	PID	Cisco Part Number (CPN)	Length	Cord Set Rating	Power Cord Illustration
Israel, SI 16S3/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-AC-16A-SG-IS	37-1658-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	16A, 250 VAC	Figure 50: CAB-AC-16A-SG-IS Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 174
Italy, CEI 23-50/Saf-D-Grid to IEC-C19	CAB-AC-16A-SG-IT	37-1651-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	16A, 250 VAC	Figure 51: CAB-AC-16A-SG-IT Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 175
North America (non locking) 110 VAC operation, Straight Blade, NEMA 5-20P/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-AC-20A-SG-US	37-1662-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	20A, 110 VAC	Figure 52: CAB-AC-20A-SG-US Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 175
North America (locking) 125 VAC operation, Twist Lock, NEMA L5-20/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-AC-20A-SG-US1	37-1652-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	20A, 125 VAC	Figure 53: CAB-AC-20A-SG-US1 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 175
North America (non locking) 200-240 VAC operation, Straight Blade, NEMA 6-20/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-AC-20A-SG-US2	37-1657-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	20A, 250 VAC	Figure 54: CAB-AC-20A-SG-US2 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 175
North America (locking) 200-240 VAC operation, Twist Lock, NEMA L6-20/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-AC-20A-SG-US3	37-1656-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	20A, 250 VAC	Figure 55: CAB-AC-20A-SG-US3 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 176

Locale and Description	PID	Cisco Part Number (CPN)	Length	Cord Set Rating	Power Cord Illustration
North America 277 VAC operation, NEMA L7-20P/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-AC-20A-SG-US4	37-1645-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	20A, 277 VAC	Figure 56: CAB-AC-20A-SG-US4 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 176
North America Cabinet Jumper Power Distribution Unit (PDU), Cabinet Jumper PDU, IEC C20/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-AC-20A-SG-C20	37-1653-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	20A, 250 VAC	Figure 57: CAB-AC-20A-SG-C20 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 176
South Africa, EL/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-AC-16A-SG-SA	37-1647-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	16A, 250 VAC	Figure 58: CAB-AC-16A-SG-SA Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 176
Korea, Src/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-AC-16A-SG-SK	37-1646-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	16A, 250 VAC	Figure 59: CAB-AC-16A-SG-SK Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 177
Switzerland, SEV 5934-2/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-AC-16A-SG-SW	37-1654-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	16A, 250 VAC	Figure 60: CAB-AC-16A-SG-SW Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 177
IEC/EU, Ring Terminal source plug, Ring Terminal/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-HV-25A-SG-IN2	37-1640-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	20A, 300 VAC/500 VDC	Figure 61: CAB-HV-25A-SG-IN2 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 177

Locale and Description	PID	Cisco Part Number (CPN)	Length	Cord Set Rating	Power Cord Illustration
IEC/EU, Saf-D-Grid P10/Saf-D-Grid P4	CAB-HV-25A-SG-IN3	37-100904-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	20A, 300 VAC	Figure 62: CAB-HV-25A-SG-IN3 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 177
North America, Ring Terminal source plug, Ring Terminal/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-HV-25A-SG-US2	37-1641-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	20A, 300 VAC/500 VDC	Figure 63: CAB-HV-25A-SG-US2 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 178
North America, Saf-D-Grid P10/Saf-D-Grid P4	CAB-HV-25A-SG-US5	37-100903-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	20A, 300 VAC	Figure 64: CAB-HV-25A-SG-US5 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 178



Note All power cords will not be orderable at first customer shipment (FCS).

Figure 43: CAB-AC-16A-SG-AR Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

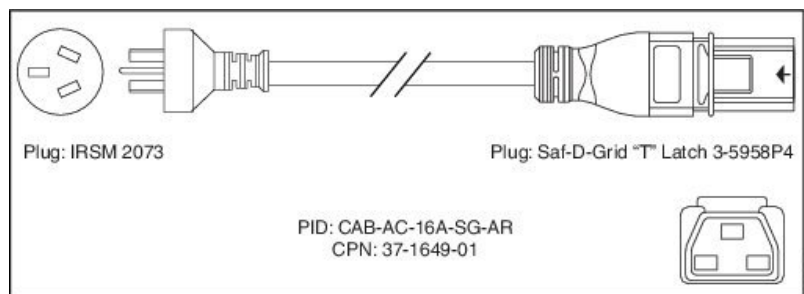


Figure 44: CAB-AC-16A-SG-AZ Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

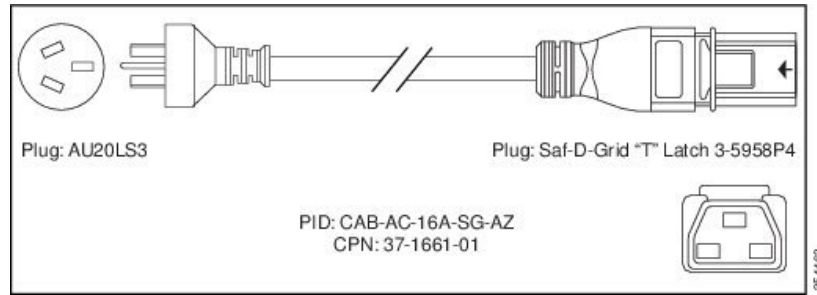


Figure 45: CAB-AC-16A-SG-BR Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

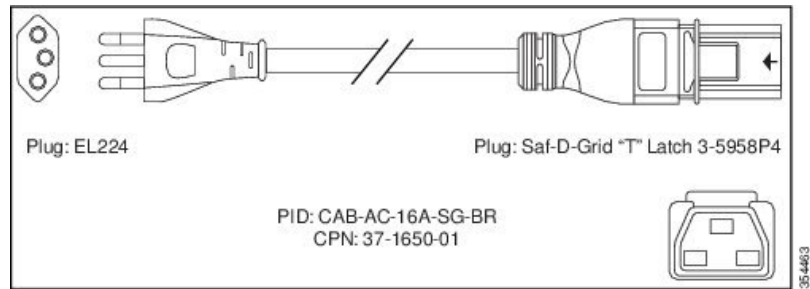


Figure 46: CAB-AC-16A-SG-CH Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

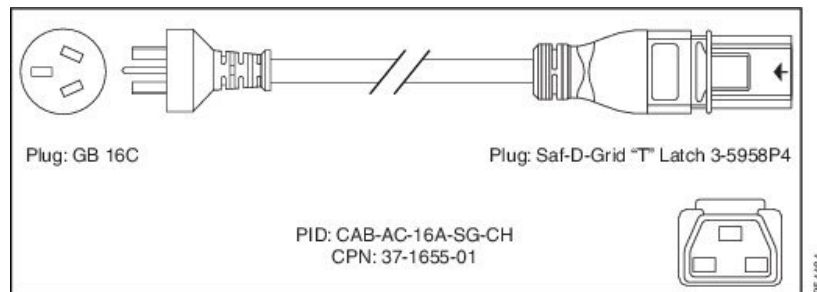


Figure 47: CAB-AC-16A-SG-EU Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

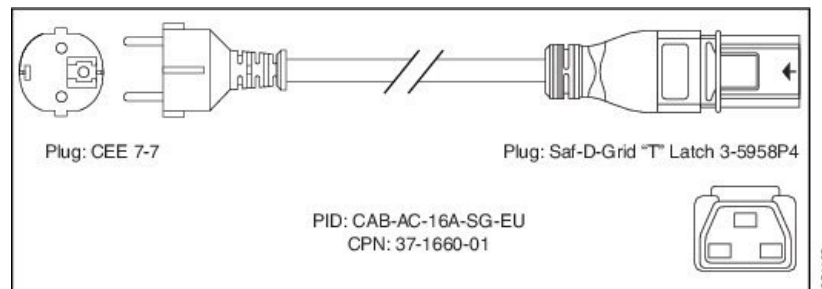


Figure 48: CAB-AC-16A-SG-IND Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

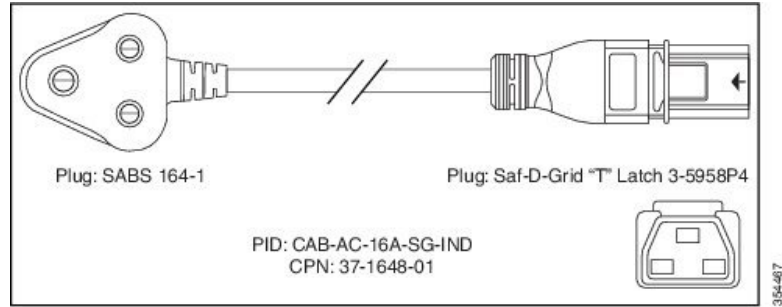


Figure 49: CAB-AC-16A-SG-IN Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

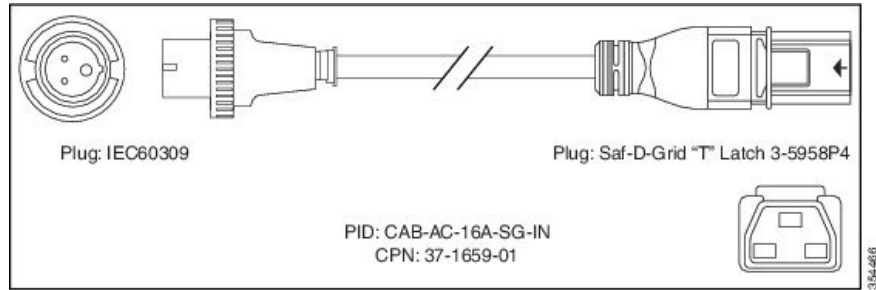


Figure 50: CAB-AC-16A-SG-IS Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

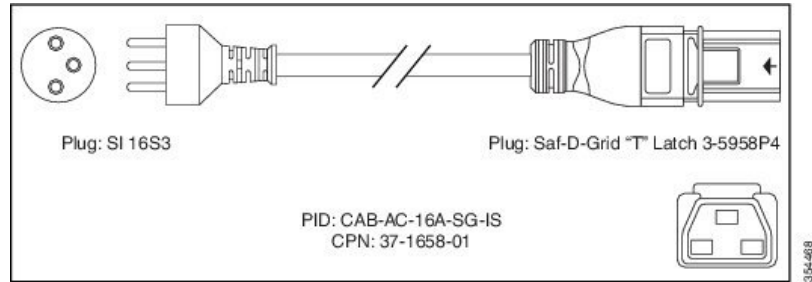


Figure 51: CAB-AC-16A-SG-IT Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

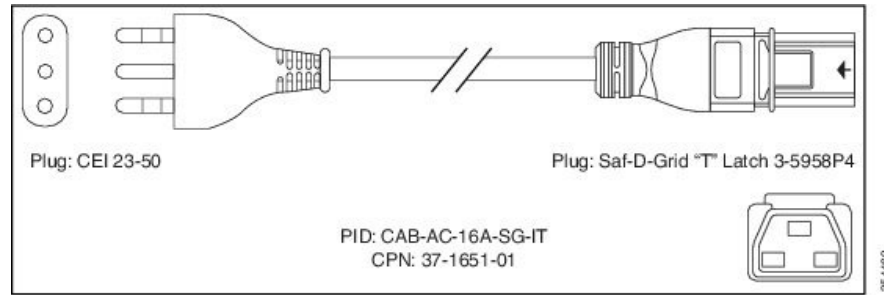


Figure 52: CAB-AC-20A-SG-US Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

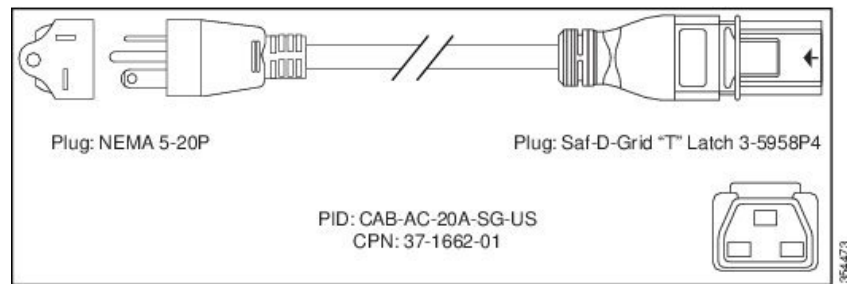


Figure 53: CAB-AC-20A-SG-US1 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

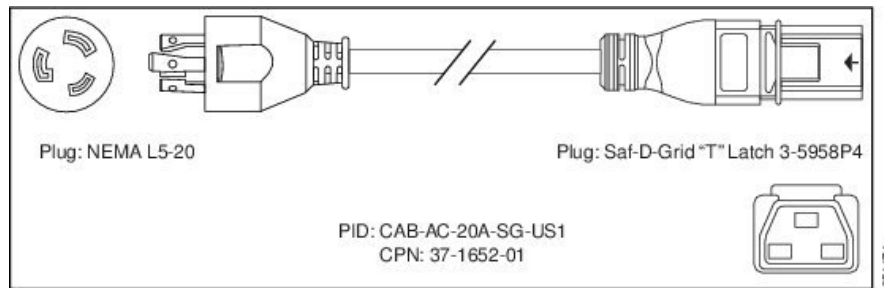


Figure 54: CAB-AC-20A-SG-US2 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

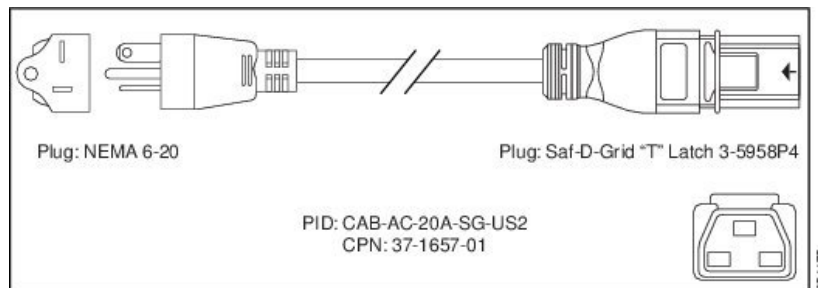


Figure 55: CAB-AC-20A-SG-US3 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

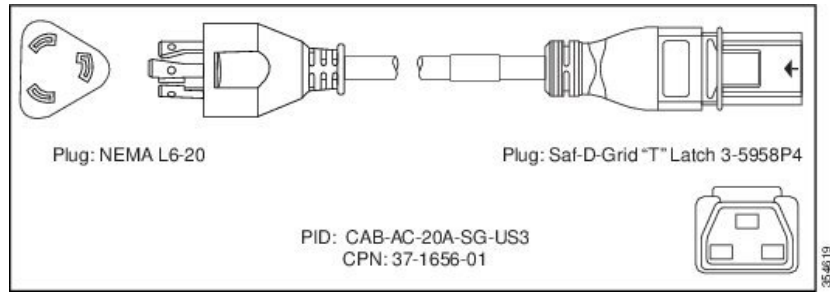


Figure 56: CAB-AC-20A-SG-US4 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

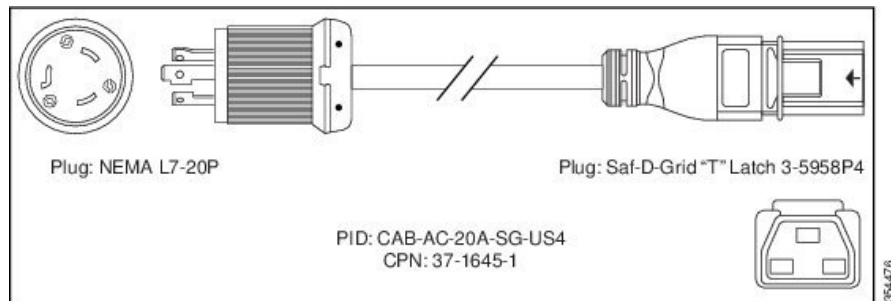


Figure 57: CAB-AC-20A-SG-C20 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

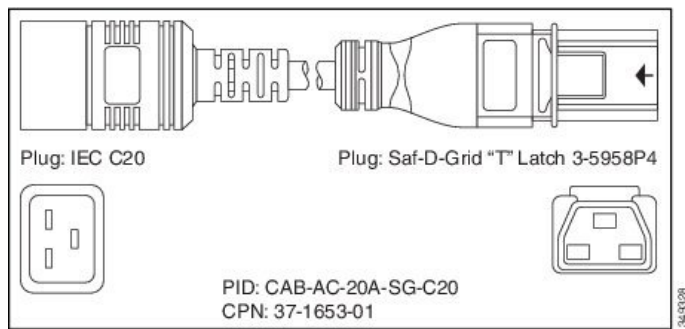


Figure 58: CAB-AC-16A-SG-SA Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

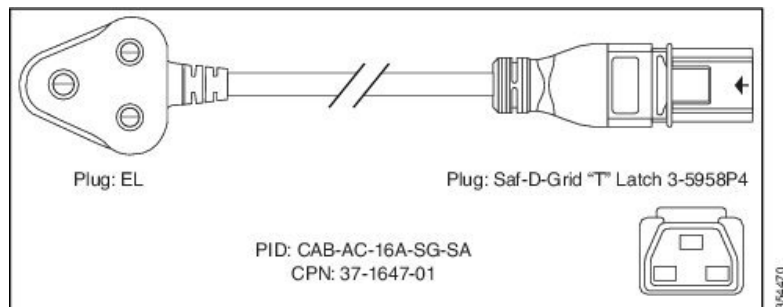


Figure 59: CAB-AC-16A-SG-SK Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

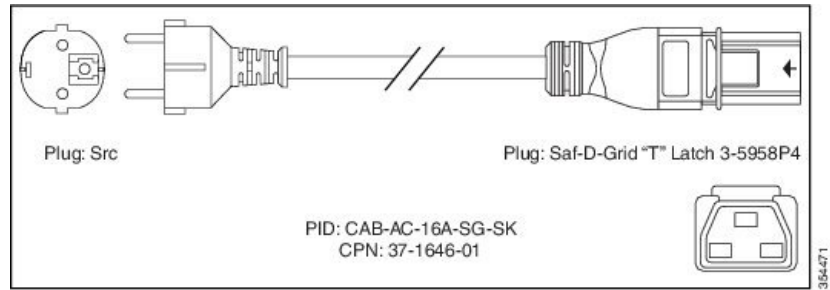


Figure 60: CAB-AC-16A-SG-SW Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

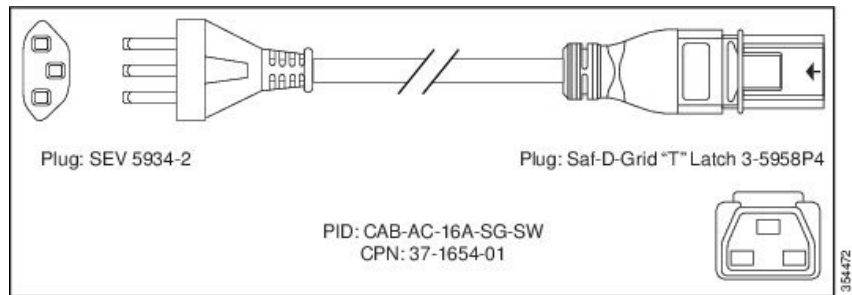


Figure 61: CAB-HV-25A-SG-IN2 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

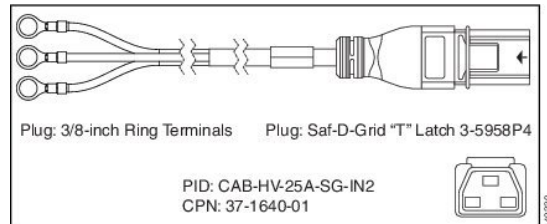


Figure 62: CAB-HV-25A-SG-IN3 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

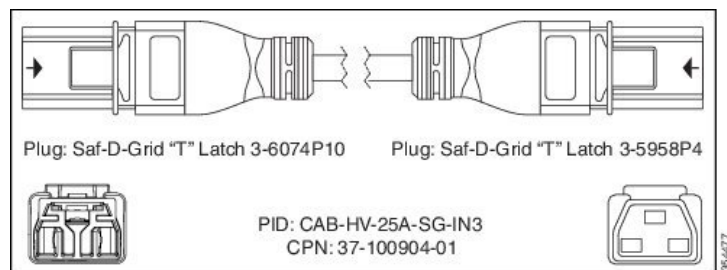


Figure 63: CAB-HV-25A-SG-US2 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

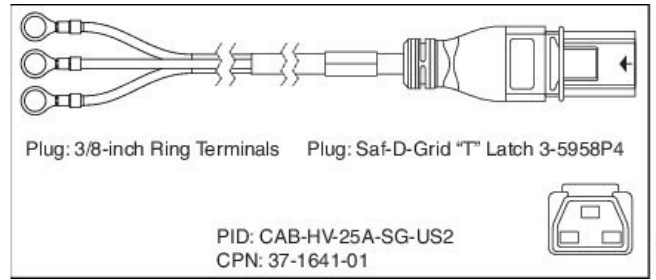
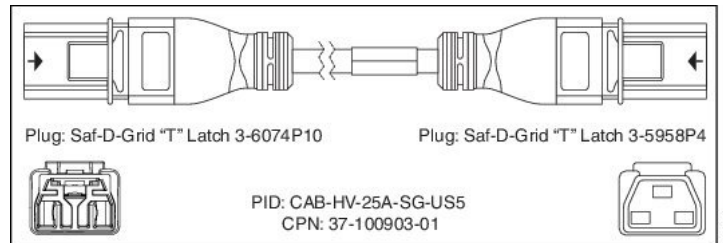


Figure 64: CAB-HV-25A-SG-US5 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit



3-kW DC Power Cord Specifications

Locale	Part Number	Cord Ratings	Power Cord Comments
All	15	45 A	6 AWG

¹⁵ Power cords used for the 3-kW DC power supply are supplied by the customer.

3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply DC Power Cord Specifications

Locale and Description	PID	Cisco Part Number (CPN)	Length	Cord Set Rating	Power Cord Illustration
International, Saf-D-Grid/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-HV-25A-SG-IN1	37-1642-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	20 A, 400 VDC	Figure 65: CAB-HV-25A-SG-IN1 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 179

Locale and Description	PID	Cisco Part Number (CPN)	Length	Cord Set Rating	Power Cord Illustration
International, Ring Terminal source plug, Ring Terminal/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-HV-25A-SG-IN2	37-1640-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	20 A, 300 VAC/500 VDC	Figure 66: CABHV-25A-SG-IN2 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 180
North America, Saf-D-Grid/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-HV-25A-SG-US1	37-1643-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	20 A, 400 VDC	Figure 67: CABHV-25A-SG-US1 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 180
North America, Ring Terminal source plug, Ring Terminal/Saf-D-Grid	CAB-HV-25A-SG-US2	37-1641-01	14' 0" (4.26 m)	20 A, 300 VAC/500 VDC	Figure 68: CABHV-25A-SG-US2 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit, on page 180



Note All power cords will not be orderable at first customer shipment (FCS).

Figure 65: CAB-HV-25A-SG-IN1 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

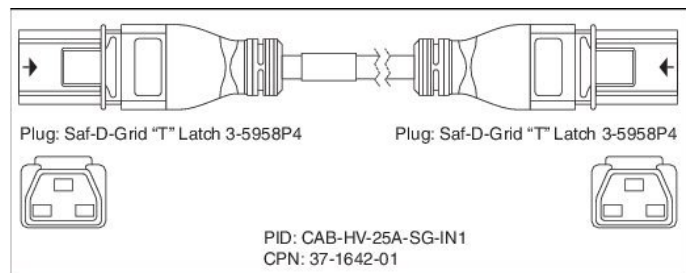


Figure 66: CAB-HV-25A-SG-IN2 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

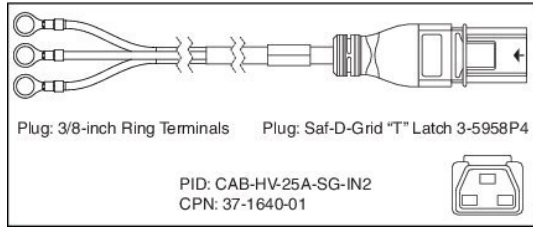


Figure 67: CAB-HV-25A-SG-US1 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit

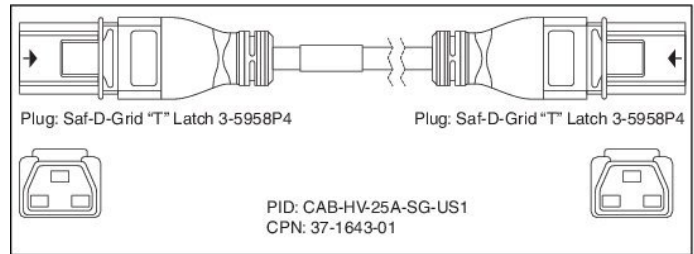
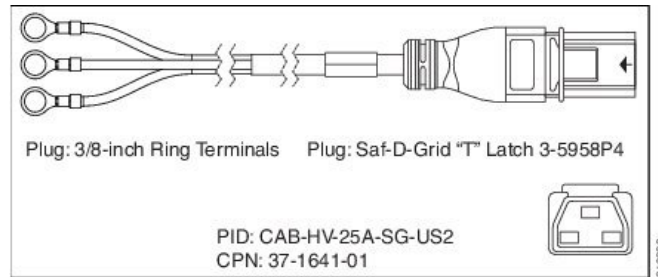


Figure 68: CAB-HV-25A-SG-US2 Power Cord and Plugs for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC Power Supply Unit





APPENDIX **B**

LEDs

This appendix includes the following topics:

- [Chassis LEDs, on page 181](#)
- [Supervisor Module LEDs, on page 182](#)
- [I/O Module LEDs, on page 184](#)
- [Fabric Module LEDs, on page 186](#)
- [Fan Tray LEDs, on page 186](#)
- [Power Supply LEDs, on page 187](#)

Chassis LEDs

Chassis LEDs

LED	Color	Status
PSU	Green	Power supplies are all operational.
	Amber	One of the following problems exist: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • At least one power supply LED is red. • At least one power supply is down.
FAN	Green	Fan trays are all operational.
	Amber	At least one fan tray module LED is red.
SUP	Green	Supervisor modules are all operational.
	Amber	At least one supervisor module LED is red.
FAB	Green	Fabric modules are all operational.
	Amber	At least one fabric module LED is red.
IOM	Green	I/O modules are all operational.
	Amber	At least one I/O module LED is red.

Supervisor Module LEDs

LED	Color	Status
STATUS	Green	All diagnostics pass. The module is operational (normal initialization sequence).
	Amber	Indicates one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The module has detected a slot ID parity error and will not power on or boot up. • The module is booting or running diagnostics (normal initialization sequence). • An over temperature condition has occurred. (A minor temperature threshold has been exceeded during environmental monitoring.)
	Flashing red	Indicates one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The diagnostic test has failed. • The module is not operational because a fault occurred during the initialization sequence. • An over temperature condition has occurred. (A major temperature threshold has been exceeded during environmental monitoring.)
	Red	The module has detected a slot ID parity error and will not power on or boot up.
	Off	The module is not receiving power.
ID	Flashing blue	The operator has activated this LED to identify this module in the chassis.
	Off	This module is not being identified.

LED	Color	Status
SYSTEM	Green	All chassis environmental monitors are reporting okay.
	Amber	Indicates one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • At least one power supply has failed or the power supply fan has failed. • Incompatible power supplies are installed. • At least one redundant fan or fan controller has failed in the chassis. Overheating is not imminent.
	Red	Indicates one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The temperature of the Supervisor engine has exceeded the major threshold level. • At least one non-redundant fan or fan controller, or both redundant, have failed in the chassis. Overheating is imminent.
ACTIVE	Green	The supervisor module is operational and active.
	Amber	The supervisor module is in standby mode.
PWR MGMT	Green	Sufficient power is available for all installed modules.
	Amber	Sufficient power is not available for all installed modules.
LINK	Green	The module has detected a link.
	Off	The module does not detect a link.
ACT	Flashing green	The module is transmitting or receiving.
	Off	The module is not transmitting or receiving.
MGMT ETH	Green	The management port is operational.
	Amber	The management port link has been disabled through the software.
	Flashing Amber	The management port link is bad and has been disabled due to a hardware failure.
	Off	The module has not detected a signal.
LOG FLASH	Green	The log flash CompactFlash or USB disk is being accessed. Do not remove the media until the LED is off.
	Off	The expansion flash CompactFlash or USB disk is not being accessed. You can remove the media while this LED is off.

Note This is available only on Supervisor-2 modules.

LED	Color	Status
Slot 0	Green	The expansion flash CompactFlash or USB disk is being accessed. Do not remove the media until the LED is off.
	Off	The log flash CompactFlash or USB disk is not being accessed. You can remove the media while this LED is off.
Off	The log flash CompactFlash or USB disk is not being accessed. You can remove the media while this LED is off.	
USB1	Green	The expansion flash CompactFlash or USB disk is being accessed. Do not remove the media until the LED is off.
	Off	The log flash CompactFlash or USB disk is not being accessed. You can remove the media while this LED is off.

I/O Module LEDs

LED	Color	Status
ID	Flashing blue	The operator has activated this LED to identify this module in the chassis.
	Off	This LED is not being used.

LED	Color	Status
Status	Green	All diagnostics passed. This module is operational (normal initialization sequence).
	Amber	Indicates one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The module is booting or running diagnostics. • An overtemperature condition has occurred. (A minor temperature threshold has been exceeded during environmental monitoring.)
	Flashing red	Indicates one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The switch has just been powered on, and the module is resetting. • The module has been inserted during the initialization process. • An overtemperature condition has occurred. A major temperature threshold has been exceeded during environmental monitoring. • The module has failed to download code and configuration information successfully during the initial reset. The module is not online.
	Red	Indicates one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The module has detected a slot ID parity error and will not power on or boot up. • The module is not fully inserted, and it is not making a reliable connection with the supervisor.
	Off	The module is not receiving power.
Link (for each port)	Green	The port is active (the link is connected and active).
	Amber	The module or port is disabled by using a CLI command or the module is initializing.
	Flashing amber	The port is faulty and disabled.
	Off	The port is not active or the link is not connected.

Fabric Module LEDs

LED	Color	Status
Status	Green	All diagnostics pass. The module is operational (normal initialization sequence).
	Orange	Indicates one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The module is booting or running diagnostics (normal initialization sequence). An over temperature condition has occurred (A minor temperature threshold has been exceeded during environmental monitoring).
	Flashing Red	Indicates one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The diagnostic test has failed. The module is not operational because a fault has occurred during the initialization sequence. An over temperature condition has occurred. (A major temperature threshold has been exceeded during environmental monitoring.)
	Red	The module has detected a slot ID parity error and will not power on or boot up.
	Off	The fabric module is not receiving power.
ID	Flashing blue	The operator has has flagged this module for identification.
	Off	This module is not being identified.

Fan Tray LEDs

LED	Color	Status
STATUS	Green	The fan tray is operational.
	Flashing red	One or more fans is running below the threshold speed. The fan tray is receiving insufficient power.
	Off	No power is going to the fan tray.
ID	Flashing blue	The operator has activated this LED to identify this module in the chassis.
	Off	This module is not being identified.

Power Supply LEDs

Depending on the power supply (AC, DC and HVAC/HVDC power supplies), there are 1 or 2 input LEDs. The Output, Fault, and ID LEDs have the same function for the AC, DC and HVAC/HVDC power supply units.

LED	Color	Status
Input 1	Green	The AC, HVAC/HVDC, or DC input voltage is within the valid range.
	Off	The AC, HVAC/HVDC, or DC input voltage is outside the valid range.
Input 2 (available only on DC power supply units)	Green	The DC input voltage is within the valid range.
	Off	The DC input voltage is outside the valid range.
Output	Green	The AC or DC output power is within the valid range.
	Off	The AC or DC output power is outside the valid range.
Fault	Off	The AC or DC output voltage and power supply unit tests are okay.
	Flasing red	Self-diagnostic tests have failed or another power supply failure has occurred.
ID	Flashing blue	The operator has activated this LED to identify this module in the chassis.
	off	This module is not being identified.



APPENDIX C

Accessory Kits

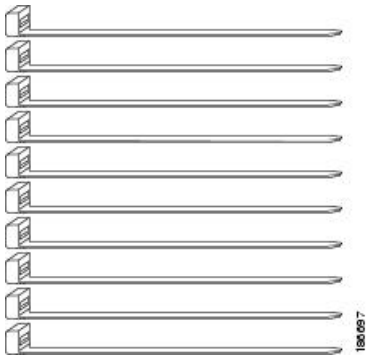
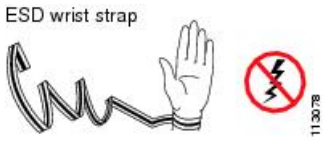
This appendix includes the following sections:

- [Cisco Nexus 7706 Switch Accessory Kit, on page 189](#)
- [Cisco Nexus 7706 Switch Center-Mount Rails Kit, on page 192](#)

Cisco Nexus 7706 Switch Accessory Kit

The following table lists and illustrates the contents for the accessory kit.

Illustration	Description	Quantity
	Rack Mount Kit <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 12-24 x 3/4-in. Phillips screws (24) • M6 x 19 mm Phillips screws (24) • Adjustable bottom-support rails (2) 	1 kit
	RJ-45 rollover cable	1
	DB-9F/RJ-45F PC terminal	1
	Ground lug kit <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Two-hole lug (1) • M4 x 8-mm Phillips pan-head screws (2) 	1 kit

Illustration	Description	Quantity
	Cable tie, 8.5 inches (10)	1
	ESD wrist strap (disposable)	1
Not applicable	Hazardous substances list for customers in China	1
Not applicable	Cisco Information Packet	1
Not applicable	1-Year Limited Warranty for Hardware	1



Note If you do not receive a part listed in this document, contact Cisco Technical Support at this URL: <http://www.cisco.com/warp/public/687/Directory/DirTAC.shtml>.

If you purchased this product through a Cisco reseller, you might receive additional contents in your kit, such as documentation, hardware, and power cables.

The product shipment includes power cords for the following power supplies:

- 3-kW AC power supplies—one power cord per power supply
- 3-kW DC power supplies—no power cords supplied (you must supply a 6 AWG cable for up to 45 A)

The shipped cables depend on your specification when placing an order. The available power cords for the 3-kW AC power supplies are as follows:

- CAB-AC-16A-AUS—power cord, 250-VAC 16A, C19, Australia
- CAB-AC-16A-CH—power cord, 16-A, China
- CAB-AC-2500W-EU—power cord, 250-VAC 16A, Europe
- CAB-AC-2500W-INT—power cord, 250-VAC 16A, International
- CAB-AC-2500W-ISRL—power cord, 250-VAC 16-A, Israel
- CAB-9K16A-US1—power cord, 250-VAC 16A, Src Plug NEMA 6-20, US/Japan
- CAB-AC-C6K-TWLK—power cord, 250-VAC 16A, twist lock, NEMA L6-20

- CAB-7513AC—power cord, AC 110V North America
- CAB-C19-CBN—cabinet jumper power cord, 250-VAC, 16A, C20C
- CAB-ACS-16—power cord, 16-A, Switzerland
- CAB-L520P-C19-US—NEMA L5-20 to IEC-C19 6ft US

The available AC power cords for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC power supplies are as follows:

- CAB-AC-16A-SG-AR—power cord, IRSM 2073/Saf-D-Grid 250 VAC 16A, Argentina
- CAB-AC-16A-SG-AZ—power cord, AU20LS3/Saf-D-Grid, 250 VAC 16A, Australia and New Zealand
- CAB-AC-16A-SG-BR—power cord, EL224/Saf-D-Grid 250 VAC 16A, Brazil
- CAB-AC-16A-SG-CH—power cord, GB 16C/Saf-D-Grid, 250 VAC 16A, China
- CAB-AC-16A-SG-EU—power cord, CEE 7-7/Saf-D-Grid, 250 VAC 16A, Europe
- CAB-AC-16A-SG-IND—power cord, SABS 164-1/Saf-D-Grid 250 VAC 16A, India
- CAB-AC-16A-SG-IN—power cord, IEC60309/Saf-D-Grid, 250 VAC 16A, International
- CAB-AC-16A-SG-IS—power cord, SI 16S3/Saf-D-Grid, 250 VAC 16A, Israel
- CAB-AC-16A-SG-IT—power cord, CEI 23-50/Saf-D-Grid to IEC-C19 250 VAC 16A, Italy
- CAB-AC-20A-SG-US—power cord, 110 VAC 20A, Straight Blade, NEMA 5-20P/Saf-D-Grid, North America
- CAB-AC-20A-SG-US1—power cord, 125 VAC 20A, twist lock, NEMA L5-20/Saf-D-Grid, North America
- CAB-AC-20A-SG-US2—power cord, 250 VAC 20A, straight-blade, NEMA 6-20/Saf-D-Grid, North America
- CAB-AC-20A-SG-US3—power cord, 250 VAC 20A, twist lock, NEMA L6-20/Saf-D-Grid, North America
- CAB-AC-20A-SG-US4—power cord, 277 VAC 20A, NEMA L7-20P/Saf-D-Grid, North America
- CAB-AC-20A-SG-C20—cabinet jumper power cord, 250 VAC, 20A, IEC C20/Saf-D-Grid, North America
- CAB-AC-16A-SG-SA—power cord, 250 VAC 16A, EL/Saf-D-Grid, South Africa
- CAB-AC-16A-SG-SK—power cord, 250 VAC 16A, Src/Saf-D-Grid, Korea
- CAB-AC-16A-SG-SW—power cord, 250 VAC 16A, SEV 5934-2/Saf-D-Grid, Switzerland
- CAB-HV-25A-SG-IN2—power cord, 300 VAC/500 VDC 20A, Ring Terminal/Saf-D-Grid, IEC/EU
- CAB-HV-25A-SG-IN3—power cord, 300 VAC 20A, Saf-D-Grid P10/Saf-D-Grid P4, IEC/EU
- CAB-HV-25A-SG-US2—power cord, 300 VAC/500 VDC 20A, Ring Terminal/Saf-D-Grid, North America
- CAB-HV-25A-SG-US5—power cord, 300 VAC 20A, Saf-D-Grid P10/Saf-D-Grid P4, North America



Note All power cords will not be orderable at first customer shipment (FCS).

The available DC power cords for the 3.5-kW HVAC/HVDC power supplies are as follows:

- CAB-HV-25A-SG-US1—power cord, 400-VDC 20A, Saf-D-Grid/Saf-D-Grid, North America
- CAB-HV-25A-SG-US2—power cord, 300-VAC/500-VDC 20A, Ring Terminal/Saf-D-Grid, North America
- CAB-HV-25A-SG-IN1—power cord, 400-VDC 20A, IEC/EU, Saf-D-Grid/Saf-D-Grid, International
- CAB-HV-25A-SG-IN2—power cord, 300-VAC/500-VDC 20A, IEC/EU, Ring Terminal/Saf-D-Grid, International



Note All power cords will not be orderable at first customer shipment (FCS).

Cisco Nexus 7706 Switch Center-Mount Rails Kit

The Center-Mount Kit is not included in the accessory kit, but, if you are centering the chassis on a two-post rack, you must order this kit (part number N77-C7706-CMK=) when you order the switch. The following table lists the contents for this kit.

Description	Quantity
Center-mount rack mounting brackets (right and left brackets)	2
Center-mount bottom support rails (right and left rails)	2
Crossbar	1
12-24 x 3/4-in. Phillips screws	20
M6 x 19-mm Phillips screws	20
M4 x 8-mm screws	2



APPENDIX **D**

Site Preparation and Maintenance Records

- [Site Preparation Checklist, on page 193](#)
- [Contact and Site Information, on page 194](#)
- [Chassis and Module Information, on page 195](#)

Site Preparation Checklist

Planning the location and layout of your equipment rack or cabinet is essential for successful switch operation, ventilation, and accessibility.

The following table lists the site planning tasks that we recommend that you complete before you install the switch. Your completion of each task ensures a successful switch installation.

Planning Activity	Verification Time and Date
Space evaluation:	
Space and layout	
Floor covering	
Impact and vibration	
Lighting	
Physical access	
Maintenance access	
Environmental evaluation:	
Ambient temperature	
Humidity	
Altitude	
Atmospheric contamination	
Airflow	

Planning Activity	Verification Time and Date
Power evaluation:	
Input power type	
Power receptacles	
Receptacle proximity to the equipment	
Dedicated (separate) circuits for power redundancy	
UPS for power failures	
Grounding: proper wire gauge and lugs	
Circuit breaker size	
Grounding evaluation:	
Data center ground	
Cable and interface equipment evaluation:	
Cable type	
Connector type	
Cable distance limitations	
Interface equipment (transceivers)	
EMI evaluation:	
Distance limitations for signaling	
Site wiring	
RFI levels	

Contact and Site Information

Use the following worksheet to record contact and site information

Contact person	
Contact phone	

Contact e-mail	
Building/site name	
Data center location	
Floor location	
Address (line 1)	
Address (line 2)	
City	
State	
ZIP code	
Country	

Chassis and Module Information

Use the following worksheets to record information about the chassis and modules.

Table 13: Chassis Information

Contract number	
Chassis serial number	
Product number	
Switch IP address	
Switch IP netmask	
Hostname	
Domain name	
IP broadcast address	
Gateway/router address	
DNS address	

Table 14: Module Information for a Cisco Nexus 7706 Switch

Slot	Module Type	Module Serial Number	Notes
1			
2			
3	Supervisor		
4	Supervisor		
5			
6			



INDEX

1-Gb SFP transceivers [160](#)
10-Gb SFP+ transceivers [152](#)
100-Gb CPAK transceivers [147](#)
10BASE-DWDM SFP+ transceivers [156](#)
3-kW AC power cords [167](#)
3-kw DC power cords [178](#)
40-Gb QSFP+ transceivers [150](#)

A

AC power supply connection [126–127, 131](#)
accessory kit [189](#)
air filter, installation [40](#)
air particulate requirements [6](#)
airflow clearance [11](#)
altitude requirements [5](#)
Altitude specifications [133](#)
attach console module command [67](#)
attach module command [62](#)

B

back plane contents, displaying [55](#)
bottom-support rails installation [17, 19](#)
 four-post rack [19](#)
 two-post rack [17](#)

C

cabinet installation [15](#)
cabinet requirements [10](#)
cable management frames, installing [36](#)
cable management system dimensions [134](#)
cable ties [189](#)
cabling clearance [11](#)
chassis dimensions [134](#)
chassis installation [21, 26](#)
chassis LEDs [181](#)
COM1/AUX serial port [44](#)
connecting ports guidelines [43](#)
connectors used with modules [139](#)
console connection [44](#)
console serial port [44](#)
console settings [44](#)

contact and site information [194](#)
copy running-config startup-config command [63](#)
CPAK transceivers [147](#)

D

DB-9F/RJ-45F PC terminsl [189](#)
DB9F/RJ-45 adapter [44](#)
DC power cords [178](#)
DC power supply, connecting [129](#)
dimensions [134](#)
dust requirements [6](#)

E

electromagnetic interference, minimizing [6](#)
environmental information, displaying [57](#)
ESD wrist strap [189](#)

F

fabric 2 to fabric 3: upgrade [123](#)
fabric 3 to fabric 2: downgrade [124](#)
fabric module [72, 118](#)
 installation [118](#)
 out-of-service [72](#)
 power up [72](#)
 poweroff [72](#)
fabric module LEDs [186](#)
fabric modules identified [1](#)
fabric modules supported [71, 116](#)
fabric modules:amount of power reserved [71](#)
fan tray installation [112](#)
fan tray LEDs [186](#)
fan tray status [79](#)
fan trays identified [1](#)
fan trays, managing [77](#)
FEX support [65](#)
front door identified [1](#)

G

ground lug kit [189](#)
grounding requirements [7](#)

grounding the chassis [31](#)

H

handles, chassis [1](#)
 hardware [51, 54](#)
 information, displaying [51](#)
 inventory, displaying [54](#)
 humidity requirements [5](#)
 humidity specifications [133](#)

I

I/O module [67, 110](#)
 Cisco Nexus 7700 [110](#)
 installation [110](#)
 console, access through [67](#)
 I/O module LEDs [184](#)
 I/O module support [65](#)
 I/O modules identified [1](#)
 initial switch configuration [46](#)
 inspecting the chassis shipment [16](#)
 interface cables [48](#)
 care [48](#)
 interface ports [47](#)
 connecting [47](#)
 IP address, setting for switch [46](#)

L

LEDs [181–182, 184, 186](#)
 chassis [181](#)
 fabric module [186](#)
 fan tray [186](#)
 I/O module [184](#)
 supervisor module [182](#)

M

management interface, connecting [45](#)
 maximum power [75–76, 135–137](#)
 3-kW AC power supplies [75, 135](#)
 3-kW DC power supplies [75–76, 135, 137](#)
 3.5-kW AC power supplies [76, 136](#)
 module [54, 63–65, 70](#)
 configuration, purging [70](#)
 configuration, saving [63](#)
 inventory, displaying [54](#)
 power cycle [64](#)
 supervisor [65](#)
 module powerup [71](#)
 module shutdown [71](#)
 module state, displaying status [67](#)
 module temperature, displaying [60](#)
 module, connecting to [62](#)

modules identified [1](#)
 modules, transceivers used for [139](#)

O

optical cable [48](#)
 care [48](#)
 out-of-band management, connecting [45](#)
 out-of-service module command [65](#)

P

particulate requirements [6](#)
 password, setting [46](#)
 port connection guidelines [43](#)
 port types for modules [139](#)
 power cables [166](#)
 power cycle a module [64](#)
 power mode, configuring [74](#)
 power modes [73](#)
 defined [73](#)
 power redundancy-mode command [74](#)
 power requirements [7, 134](#)
 power reserved for fabric modules [71](#)
 power supplies identified [1](#)
 power supply (AC) connection [126–127, 131](#)
 power supply installation [124](#)
 power usage information, displaying [63](#)
 purge module command [70](#)

Q

QSFP+ transceivers [150](#)

R

rack installation [15](#)
 rack mount kit [189](#)
 rack requirements [10](#)
 radio frequency interference, minimizing [6](#)
 rebooting the switch [64](#)
 reload command [64](#)
 reload module command [63–64](#)
 RJ-45 connectors [166](#)
 specifications [166](#)
 RJ-45 rollover cable [44, 189](#)

S

Serial number, displaying [55](#)
 service clearance [11](#)
 SFP transceivers [160](#)
 SFP+ transceivers [152](#)
 shock and vibration requirements [7](#)
 show environment command [57](#)

- show environment power command [63](#)
- show environment temperature command [60](#)
- show hardware command [51](#)
- show srom backplane command [55](#)
- site preparation [5-7](#)
 - air particulate requirements [6](#)
 - altitude requirements [5](#)
 - dust requirements [6](#)
 - electromagnetic interference, minimizing [6](#)
 - grounding requirements [7](#)
 - humidity requirements [5](#)
 - particulate requirements [6](#)
 - radio frequency interference, minimizing [6](#)
 - shock and vibration requirements [7](#)
 - vibration and shock requirements [7](#)
- site preparation checklist [193](#)
- supervisor LEDs [182](#)
- supervisor module [65, 82](#)
 - installation [82](#)
 - overview [65](#)
 - shutting down [65](#)

- supervisor module: installing [86](#)
- Supervisor modules identified [1](#)
- switch IP address [46](#)

T

- temperature specifications [133](#)
- transceivers [48, 147, 150, 152, 156, 160](#)
 - 1-Gb SFP [160](#)
 - 10-Gb SFP+ [152](#)
 - 100 Gb CPAK [147](#)
 - 10BASE-DWDM SFP+ [156](#)
 - 40-Gb QSFP+ [150](#)
 - care [48](#)
- transceivers used with modules [139](#)

V

- vibration and shock requirements [7](#)

